

Note: This PDF is downloaded from puspas.com.np. It is completely free. NOT FOR SALE. [Click here](#) to check for the latest update on this pdf.

Version: 1.0

Contents

Click on any of the desired item/lesson name or exercise from the list below to jump to that portion directly.

Section One: Language Development

Unit 1 Education and Humanity (Education First)	6
<i>Ways With Words</i>	6
<i>Comprehension</i>	7
<i>Critical Thinking</i>	8
<i>Grammar</i>	10
Unit 2 Communication (Freewriting)	13
<i>Ways With Words</i>	13
<i>Comprehension</i>	14
<i>Critical Thinking</i>	15
<i>Writing</i>	16
<i>Grammar</i>	17
Unit 3 Media and Society (Social Media: Its Influence and Control over People's Lives)	20
<i>Ways With Words</i>	20
<i>Comprehension</i>	23
<i>Critical Thinking</i>	24
<i>Writing</i>	25
<i>Grammar</i>	26
Unit 4 History and Culture (Qin Dynasty)	28
<i>Ways With Words</i>	28
<i>Comprehension</i>	29
<i>Critical Thinking</i>	30
<i>Writing</i>	31
<i>Grammar</i>	32
Unit 5 Life and Love (The Looking Glass)	34
<i>Ways With Words</i>	34
<i>Comprehension</i>	35
<i>Critical Thinking</i>	36
<i>Grammar</i>	37
Unit 6 Health and Exercise (You May Scoff)	40
<i>Ways With Words</i>	40
<i>Comprehension</i>	41
<i>Critical Thinking</i>	43
<i>Writing</i>	43
<i>Grammar</i>	44
Unit 7 Ecology and Development (Foresters without Diplomas)	47

Follow us on:



Ways With Words	47
Comprehension	48
Critical Thinking	49
Writing	50
Grammar	51
Unit 8 Humour and Satire (A Few Kind Words for Superstition)	53
Ways With Words	53
Comprehension	55
Critical Thinking	56
Writing	57
Grammar	58
Unit 9 Democracy and Human Rights (Inauguration Speech of Nelson Mandela)	61
Ways With Words	61
Comprehension	62
Critical Thinking	63
Writing	64
Grammar	65
Unit 10 Home Life and Family Relationship (The Tattered Blanket)	67
Ways With Words	67
Comprehension	68
Critical Thinking	69
Grammar	70
Unit 11 Arts and Creation (Why Is the Renaissance Important?)	73
Ways With Words	73
Comprehension	74
Critical Thinking	76
Writing	77
Grammar	78
Unit 12 Fantasy (Down the Rabbit Hole)	80
Ways With Words	80
Comprehension	81
Critical Thinking	82
Writing	83
Grammar	83
Unit 13 Career and Entrepreneurship (Mahabir Pun: A Visionary Social Entrepreneur)	86
Ways With Words	86
Comprehension	87
Critical Thinking	87
Grammar	88
Unit 14 Power and Politics (Napoleon Bonaparte)	91
Ways With Words	91
Comprehension	92
Critical Thinking	92
Writing	94
Grammar	95
Unit 15 War and Peace (Shall there be Peace?)	97

Follow us on:



Ways With Words	97
Comprehension	97
Critical Thinking	98
Writing	101
Grammar	102
Unit 16 Critical Thinking (What Is the Soul?)	104
Ways With Words	104
Comprehension	104
Critical Thinking	105
Writing	106
Grammar	107
Unit 17 Globalisation and Diaspora (What Lost Identity? The Diaspora and Globalisation)	109
Ways With Words	109
Comprehension	110
Critical Thinking	111
Writing	112
Grammar	113
Unit 18 Immigration and Identity (Identity Crisis in Immigrants)	116
Ways With Words	116
Comprehension	117
Critical Thinking	118
Writing	119
Grammar	120
Unit 19 Travel and Tourism (Discovering West Nepal – The Wild Frontier)	122
Ways With Words	122
Comprehension	123
Critical Thinking	124
Writing	125
Grammar	126
Unit 20 Science and Technology (Taking my Son to College, Where Technology has Replaced Serendipity)	129
Ways With Words	129
Comprehension	130
Critical Thinking	131
Grammar	133

Follow us on:



Section Two: Literature

Unit 1.1 The Selfish Giant (Short Stories)	135
<i>Understanding the text</i>	136
<i>Reference to the context</i>	137
<i>Reference beyond the text</i>	139
Unit 1.2 The Oval Portrait (Short Stories)	141
<i>Understanding the text</i>	142
<i>Reference to the context</i>	143
<i>Reference beyond the text</i>	145
Unit 1.3 God Sees the Truth but Waits (Short Stories)	147
<i>Understanding the text</i>	149
<i>Reference to the context</i>	149
<i>Reference beyond the text</i>	151
Unit 1.4 The Wish (Short Stories)	153
<i>Understanding the text</i>	155
<i>Reference to the context</i>	155
<i>Reference beyond the text</i>	157
Unit 1.5 Civil Peace (Short Stories)	160
<i>Understanding the text</i>	161
<i>Reference to the context</i>	162
<i>Reference beyond the text</i>	164
Unit 1.6 Two Little Soldiers (Short Stories)	167
<i>Understanding the text</i>	168
<i>Reference to the context</i>	169
<i>Reference beyond the text</i>	171
Unit 1.7 An Astrologer's Day (Short Stories)	173
<i>Understanding the text</i>	174
<i>Reference to the context</i>	175
<i>Reference beyond the text</i>	177
Unit 2.1 Corona Says (Poems)	179
<i>Understanding the text</i>	180
<i>Reference to the context</i>	180
<i>Reference beyond the text</i>	182
Unit 2.2 A Red, Red Rose (Poems)	184
<i>Understanding the text</i>	184
<i>Reference to the context</i>	185
<i>Reference beyond the text</i>	188
Unit 2.3 All the World's a Stage (Poems)	190
<i>Understanding the text</i>	191
<i>Reference to the context</i>	192
<i>Reference beyond the text</i>	194
Unit 2.4 Who are you, little i? (Poems)	196
<i>Understanding the text</i>	197
<i>Reference to the context</i>	198

Follow us on:



Reference beyond the text	199
Unit 2.5 The Gift in Wartime (Poems)	202
Understanding the text	204
Reference to the context	205
Reference beyond the text	206
Unit 3.1 Sharing Tradition (Essays)	208
Understanding the text	208
Reference to the context	209
Reference beyond the text	211
Unit 3.2 How to Live Before You Die (Essays)	214
Understanding the text	216
Reference to the context	217
Reference beyond the text	219
Unit 3.3 What I Require from Life (Essays)	221
Understanding the text	223
Reference to the context	224
Reference beyond the text	225
Unit 3.4 What is Poverty? (Essays)	228
Understanding the text	229
Reference to the context	231
Reference beyond the text	233
Unit 3.5 Scientific Research is a Token of Humankind's Survival (Essays)	235
Understanding the text	236
Reference to the context	237
Reference beyond the text	240
Unit 4.1 Trifles (One Act Plays)	243
Understanding the text	243
Reference to the context	244
Reference beyond the text	246
Unit 4.2 A Sunny Morning (One Act Plays)	249
Understanding the text	251
Reference to the context	252
Reference beyond the text	254
Unit 4.3 Refund (One Act Plays)	256
Understanding the text	256
Reference to the context	257
Reference beyond the text	259

Follow us on:



Language Development Unit 1 Education and Humanity (Education First) Class 11 English Exercise

Malala Yousafzai

Ways With Words

A. Find the words from the text which mean the following.

- a. a messenger or representative, especially one on a diplomatic mission – **envoy**
- b. the state or quality of being worthy of honor or respect – **dignity**
- c. harm done to someone in response to harm – **revenge**
- d. a person who holds extreme views in political or religious matters – **extremist**
- e. sympathetic pity and concern for the sufferings or misfortunes of others – **compassion**
- f. a person who is believed to speak for God – **prophet**
- g. the study of the nature of knowledge, reality and existence – **philosophy**
- h. the use of physical force so as to injure, abuse, damage or destroy – **violence**
- i. an unreasonable dislike of a particular group of people or things – **prejudice**

B. Match the words on the left with their opposite meanings on the right.

- honour – disgrace
- innocent – guilty
- brutality – kindness
- forgiveness – punishment
- illiteracy – literacy

C. Using dictionary

a. Study the dictionary entry above and answer these questions.

i. What is the headword in the first entry?

Answer: The headword in the first entry is Humanity.

ii. How many meanings of the word 'humanity' are given?

Answer: Four meanings of the word 'humanity' are given.

Follow us on:

iii. What do the abbreviations U, OPP, pl, and sth stand for?

Answer: U, OPP, pl and sth stand for uncountable, opposite, plural and something respectively.

iv. What is the British English spelling of 'humanize'?

Answer: The British English spelling of 'humanize' is humanise.

v. How is the word 'humanize' pronounced?

Answer: The word 'humanize' is pronounced as /'hju:mənaɪz/.

vi. If we say Every person should have the sense of humanity, which meaning of 'humanity' is applied?

Answer: If we say Every person should have the sense of humanity, the quality of being kind to people and animals by making sure that they do not suffer more than is necessary of 'humanity' is applied.

b. Arrange the following words in alphabetical order.

i. advance analysis amuse assure allergy attain aid anxiety acute agreement
→ acute, advance, agreement, aid, allergy, amuse, analysis, anxiety, assure, attain

ii. smoke small smart speaking smelling smoothly smuggler smashed smearing smallpox

→ small, smallpox, smart, smashed, speaking, smearing, smelling, smoke, smoothly, smuggler,

iii. terminal terminate terminology termite terms terrace terrible terribly

→ terminal, terminate, terminology, terms, terrace, terrible, territory, terror

Comprehension

Answer the following questions.

a. Why did the speaker receive thousands of good-wishes cards and gifts from all over the world?

Answer: The speaker was shot by Taliban on the left side of her forehead and was hospitalized for her treatment and recovery. So the speaker received thousands of good wishes cards and gifts from all over the world.

b. According to the speaker, what are hundreds of human rights activists and social workers struggling for?

Answer: According to the speaker, hundreds of human activist and social workers are struggling for achieving their goals of education, peace and equality.

Follow us on:

c. What has she learnt from Gandhi?

Answer: She learnt the value of nonviolence from Gandhi.

d. In what sense is peace necessary for education?

Answer: Peace is very necessary for qualitative education. Children can obtain fruitful education only if there is peaceful environment. If not then the children are afraid to go to school and furthermore they cannot focus on their study. Hence peace is very necessary for education.

e. According to the speaker, what are the main problems faced by both men and women?

Answer: According to the speaker, poverty, ignorance, injustice, racism and deprivation of basic rights are the main problems faced by both men and women.

f. What is Malala calling upon all governments?

Answer: Malala is calling upon all governments to ensure free education for all children all over the world, to fight against terrorism and violence and to protect them from brutality and harm.

g. What is the main message of this speech?

Answer: The main message of this speech is that education is such a weapon that eradicate the problems like illiteracy, terrorism, violence and harassment of fundamentals rights of human. So, providing education to every children in this world should be the first priority of all governments.

Critical Thinking

a. ‘All children have the right to quality education. How can we ensure this right to every child? Discuss the role of the government and the parents to make sure that every child can attend school.’

Answer: Quality education is the demand of 21st century. There is different aspects related to get the quality education. The role of parents, government and schools are the main stakeholders related to a student’s quality education.

Role of Government

- The government can subsidize education in several forms including school fees for low-income parents.
- Providing equality in education whereby the government ensures that the public schools offer a high quality of knowledge to the learners.
- A government should ensure that teachers are well paid so that they are motivated in the provision of their services.
- A government should put in place rules that could check to eliminate outdated syllabus since it misdirects many teachers and learners in schools.

Follow us on:



AR Dinesh



puspas.com.np



Puspa Shrestha

Roles of Parents

- Kids would be easily inspired by what their parents do. So it would be good to be a role model in their learning phase.
- Parents should talk to their kid about how their school life and different memories associated with it.
- Parents should help them to be more organized with their daily routine and find enough time for the lessons.
- Parents should make sure that the kids are provided with a peaceful and pleasant atmosphere at home.

b. ‘Do you think that there is still discrimination between sons and daughters in terms of providing education in our country? What strategies do you suggest to overcome such discrimination against girls?’

Answer: Education in Nepal is still in its background phase. While advancements have been made to provide free education through government schools, this education is widely considered to be insufficient in comparison to the education provided by private schools. In comparison to private schools, government schools are less funded and provide a poorer quality of education. Despite this, a large number of girls are enrolled in government schools, while their brothers receive the opportunity for quality, or at least better, education in private schools. This disparity can be traced back to a history of gender based marginalization in the Nepalese society. More significantly, girls are discriminated in terms of education because their parents think that they go to their new homes after their marriage and cannot care their parents when they get older. Finally people still believe that males are physically, mentally and politically strong so that parents send their sons to high quality schools and girls to lower one.

A number of strategies should be applied by all to afford education to the girls to bring about the prosperity of the nation. Some of them are listed below:

1. Gender biases should be ended.
2. Women should be given platforms to be in power and achieve economic success.
3. Violence and sexual assault against women should be ended.
4. The preference for the son should be removed from the people’s psychology.
5. Money given in the name of dowry should be invested in the girl’s education.

c. ‘A Chinese philosopher Confucius said, “If your plan is for one year, plant rice; if your plan is for ten years, plant trees; if your plan is for one hundred years, educate children.” What is the meaning of this saying? Elaborate this with examples.’

Answer: The sole meaning of above statement is that our destination decide what type of efforts should be applied. If our set our goals and destination big then surely it will take a long time to achieve it. One of the philosophical doctrines presented by the Chinese philosopher before Christ, confusion is the key factor for bringing prolonged dimensional change in the life of people. It is

Follow us on:



not like planting rice and planting trees whose output appears within a year or within a decade. We have to wait for almost a century to get better result.

Actually, the above statement is explaining about the importance of education. At present time people without education is just like a pen without ink. Education shapes our future. It makes us well reputed in the society. Furthermore, without education thinking of a developed country is just like building castle in air. If today's children are provided a quality education then they will play a crucial role in the development of the nation and create civilized society in future. Therefore, children should be provided with the best possible education as an investment so that it will benefit the whole country in the future.

Grammar

Classify the underlined words into different word classes.

a. The man who is wearing glasses is my uncle's friend.

who – pronoun
wearing – verb
my – determiner

b. I bought a round table in the supermarket.

round – adjective
the – determiner

c. Alas, she is dead.

Alas – interjection

d. Hari works very hard all the time but his wife is very lazy.

hard – adverb
wife – noun
very – adverb

e. I have never been to Japan.

never – adverb

f. Ann drove a car safely.

Ann – Noun
Safely – Adverb

g. Nobody has claimed it.

nobody – pronoun
it – pronoun

Follow us on:

h. She cut her hand with a knife.

her – determiner

with – preposition

i. They have postponed the program because of rain.

have – verb

because of – preposition

rain – noun

j. Everybody comes to the party.

everybody – pronoun

k. All such people ought to be avoided.

all – determiner

such – determiner

l. All of the food has gone.

all – pronoun

m. What was that noise?

what – pronoun

n. One must not boast of one's own success.

one – pronoun

o. Nobody was there to rescue the child.

nobody – pronoun

p. Neither of the accusations is true.

neither – pronoun

q. Neither answer is correct.

neither – determiner

r. Here is the book that you lent me.

here – adverb

that – pronoun

s. Without health there is no happiness.

without – preposition

health – noun

happiness – noun

THE END

Follow us on:



If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

[English](#)

[Nepali](#)

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Language Development Unit 2 Communication (Freewriting) Class 11 English Exercise

Peter Elbow

Ways With Words

A. The words in the crossword puzzle are from the text. Find them in the text to solve the puzzle based on the clues given below.

Down:

1. to be preoccupied with a single topic or emotion – **obsessed**
2. to move slowly and quietly in a particular direction – **creep**
3. orderly, logical and Consistent – **coherent**

Across:

1. to utter rapidly or unintelligibly – **babble**
2. to insert something between other things – **interpose**
3. an unreadable handwriting – **squiggle**

B. Use the following words in sentences of your own.

Massive:

He died from a massive heart attack.

Consciousness:

He moaned with pain before losing consciousness.

Catch-as-catch-can:

We went hitchhiking for a week and lived catch-as-catch-can.

Give up:

I'm too close to my goal to give up now.

Abandon:

As a baby he was abandoned by his mother.

Lousy:

He blamed Shreya for a lousy weekend.

Follow us on:

Editing:

He's editing a book of essays by Ritesh Berlin.

C. Word formation: Adjectives and Adverbs

b. Write the following words in the right columns. Change the adjectives into adverbs and nouns into adjectives.

Answer:

Adjectives	Adverbs	Nouns	Adjectives
Careful	Carefully	Rain	Rainy
Perfect	Perfectly	Bush	Bushy
Automatic	Automatically	Spice	Spicy
Certain	Certainly	Snow	Snowy
Fair	Fairly	Blood	Bloody
General	Generally	Cloud	Cloudy
Proud	Proudly	Bag	Baggy
Rapid	Rapidly	Mood	Moody
Proper	Properly	Air	Airy
Final	Finally	Cream	Creamy
Common	Commonly	Dust	Dusty
Beautiful	Beautifully	Ice	Icy
Frequent	Frequently	Fun	Funny
Heavy	Heavily	Ease	Easy
Hungry	Hungrily	Hand	Handy
		Oil	Oily
		Greed	Greedy
		Health	Healthy
		Hill	Hilly

c. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate adjective or adverb.

- Pramila is playing quietly (quiet/quietly).
- Hari speaks very loudly (loud/loudly).
- Mukesh is a careful (careful/carefully) driver.
- The test was easy (easy/easily) and we finished in time.
- He is fitting the automatic (automatic/automatically) door in my house.
- My uncle speaks perfect (perfect/perfectly) Chinese.
- It was raining very heavily (heavy/heavily).
- She looked very calm (calm/calmly), but I am sure she was feeling very nervous.

Comprehension

Answer the following questions.

Follow us on:



a. Why is freewriting also called ‘automatic writing’?

Answer: Freewriting is also called ‘automatic writing’ because it is a continuous process of writing which is free from spellings, grammar and topics.

b. How do you differentiate writing from speaking?

Answer: Writing is editable and can be made more logical but it’s not possible in speaking. Writing is something evidential because it can be examined in future too but speaking is non evidential.

c. What is the biggest obstacle in the writing process, according to Elbow? Do you agree with him? Why? Why not?

Answer: The biggest obstacles in the writing process are the thoughts like what to write, contemplation of wrong grammar, wordiness of right editing etc. according to the Elbow. I favor his words. If writer started caring about his grammar, spelling, coherence and editing from first he can’t learn free writing properly.

d. How can freewriting overcome ‘writer’s block’?

Answer: Writers block are thoughts like what to write, how to write coherently, how to write right words and so on. Such methods tends to be writing than free writing. But free writing allows writer to write whatever he/she want without any limitations. Hence free writing overcome writes block.

e. What do you mean by ‘voice’ in writing?

Answer: Words, vocabularies and writing style is considered as voice in writing.

f. Elbow uses a simile to explain that freewriting “is like writing something and putting it in a bottle in the sea.” What does this mean? Explain.

Answer: If we put something in bottle and put it in the sea, nobody will go to sea again in search of that bottle and see what’s inside that. Similarly, if we write something in our copy and leave that, it won’t be examined by anybody else later.

Critical Thinking

a. How does the author persuade readers in this essay? What is he trying to communicate to the readers?

Answer: The author here in this essay has suggested his suggestions for improving writing skills for all his readers. According to him, the best way to improve writing skills is free writing. Free writing should be done repeatedly to improve writing skills. He calls it automatic writing where a writer can express his feelings spontaneously. Free writing never accepts feedback. He also adds that the most important part of freewriting is “don’t change”. For him, editing is the biggest obstacle in the writing process. Compulsive and premature

Follow us on:

editing habits hinder the writer's creativity. The writing process becomes difficult as well as dead through the editing process. For writers, free writing should be kept away from the editing process that gets in the way of the author's authentic feeling and natural way. According to him, the main source of strength in our writing is the "voice" which includes sound, rhythm, and plot. It is the power that makes the reader listen to the writer. It is the energy that pushes meaning into the thick skull.

b. Elbow said, freewriting "is an exercise in bringing together the process of producing words and putting them down on the page." Do you agree with his statement? Why? Why not?

Answer: Yes, I agree with his statement. The main thing about freewriting is that it is not editable. This will make the writing less bogged down because the words will be easier to enter. Free writing is like our hidden voice that comes naturally when we start. We started producing words naturally. This is sound, plot and rhythm and is the main source of strength in our writing. A massive and complex series of edits was the biggest obstacle to the writing process, according to Elbow. Therefore, he asks us to start writing freely without considering the results. We just generate the words and write on the page. When we forget about editing, our freewriting becomes fluid. This helps us the next time we start writing freely.

c. How did you learn to write? What was particularly difficult in writing? What inspired you to write? What are some of the challenges that you still face while writing?

Answer: I learn to write by practicing freewriting on different topics from my English teacher. The most difficult thing in writing for me was to start writing. I felt a lot of difficulties at the beginning. Then I started doing things repeatedly. Every time I write, the writing looked better and better. I created a blog page and write blogs daily. Written articles related to stories, reports, news etc. inspired me to write. There are some of the challenges that I still face which are as follows:

1. Grammatical errors
2. Spelling Errors
3. Lack of Ideas
4. Poor Creativity

Writing

C. Write a paragraph on any one of the following topics.

a. My School Library

Follow us on:



My School Library is a storehouse of books. It has a lot of different types of books. There are different subjects' books in my School library. Students can get book issued in their library card. There are also many journals and magazines in my school library. Books and journals are issued for 15 days, then they should renew for next 15 days or I can get other book. There are three big rooms in library building. In one room, there are text books of science, commerce, education, humanities, and information technology faculties. In second room, there are history, literature, journal and other books in different languages. The books are arranged in almirahs and shelves. The third room of the library is the reading room. It is a quiet place. It remains open all working day.

b. Moral Values I Like Most

Moral values are the principles and ethics that help us to live an honest life. It keeps our life on the right path. Besides this, honesty and truthfulness are great moral values I like most. When we are honest and live by truth, there is no fear of corruption and violence. In this condition, there will be greater peace all around. We need to be courageous, bold, honest and truthful. It is easy to tell a lie and get benefit but we should try to live by truth. The truth may hurt us or someone but we may have to uphold the reality. We have to accept the truth at all times even the unfavorable time. We shouldn't be jealous of others' belongings. We should do smart work to earn money without cheating other persons.

Grammar

B. Rewrite the following sentences with the adverbs in the appropriate place.

i. I watch television. (often)

I often watch television.

ii. Have you been to Janakpur? (ever)

Have you ever been to Janakpur.

iii. They play football on Saturday. (sometimes)

They sometimes play football on Saturday.

iv. The weather is bad in November. (always)

The weather is always bad in November.

v. We have fish for dinner. (seldom)

We seldom have fish for dinner.

Follow us on:



vi. Pritam doesn't get up before seven. (usually)

Pritam usually gets up after seven.

vii. I was very tired and I was hungry. (also)

I was very tired and I was also hungry.

viii. Did you enjoy the flight? (both)

Did you both enjoy the flight?

C. Rewrite the following sentences placing the underlined words in the right position.

i. I never have understood her.

I have never understood her.

ii. We are often invited to the parties.

We are often invited to the parties.

iii. We all were tired, so we all fell asleep.

We were all tired, so we all fell asleep.

iv. Rajan drives always to work.

Rajan always drives to work.

v. Pradip hardly ever watches television, but he reads newspapers a lot.

Pradip hardly ever watches television, but he read newspaper a lot.

vi. We enjoyed very much the party.

We enjoyed the party very much.

vii. My brother speaks fluently English.

My brother speaks English fluently.

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Follow us on:



Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

English

Nepali

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Language Development

Unit 3 Media and Society (Social Media: Its Influence and Control over People's Lives)

Class 11 English Exercise

Aulia Maharani Karli

Ways With Words

A. Find the words from the text that have the following meanings.

- a. a personal or corporate website – **blog**
- b. a job requiring expertise in a particular field – **profession**
- c. a feeling of sadness – **disappointment**
- d. put under custody – **detained**
- e. found guilty – **convicted**
- f. breaking or disregarding rules or system – **violating**
- g. advantages and disadvantages – **pros and cons**
- h. a non-statutory monetary penalty – **amercement**

B. Use the following prepositional verbs in sentences.

apologize to

She apologized to all of the patients she had kept waiting.

adapt to

It is really hard for Jim to adapt to the new environment.

devote to

They devote an hour every day to worship.

refer to

Her mother never referred to him again.

reply to

The company has replied to the recent protests by posting an ad in the local newspaper.

admire for

I admire her dedication to the job.

apply for

Only genuine refugees can apply for asylum.

Follow us on:

pray for

I came up here to pray for the most important things.

scold for

You feel a little like a scold for wanting it to buckle down and concentrate.

vote for

In parliament, all members voted for the new tax.

aim at

In the long run men hit only what they aim at.

arrive at

I arrive at nine o'clock.

glance at

With a glance at the demon lord, she stretched to grab it and rose.

look at

He turned and looked at her.

bring up

She's struggling to bring up a family alone.

agree on

We agree on the question.

comment on

She refused to comment on their decision.

concentrate on

She closed her eyes to concentrate hard on summoning the portal.

rely on

They rely on a well for all their water.

count on

I was counting on the money from the insurance to buy a new house.

grow up

It's a wonderful place to grow up.

escape from

He made a daring escape from his kidnappers.

recover from

We prayed she would recover from her illness.

Follow us on:

resign from

He was forced to resign from the board in protest.

suffer from

All children will tend to suffer from separation from their parents and siblings.

separate from

South America separated from Africa 200 million years ago.

worry about

She always worries about his weight.

argue about

My two elder sisters always argue each other about politics.

boast about

She is boasting about how wonderful her car is.

dream about

dreamed about Annie all last night.

acquaint with

Travel will acquaint us with new customs.

agree with

I know you agree with me.

charge with

It's difficult to see charge with in a sentence.

trust with

My parents trust me with their life.

confuse with

People often confuse me and my twin brother.

believe in

I believe in working hard to achieve success.

involve in

The test will involve answering questions about a photograph.

succeed in

He wants to succeed in everything he does.

specialize in

The bakers specialize in catering for large parties.

Follow us on:

absorb in

Plants absorb carbon in the form of carbon dioxide.

Comprehension

A. Fill in the gaps with appropriate words/phrases from the text.

- People are using social media for individual as well as marketing purposes.
- Social media is not only a platform of sharing views, but also a platform of marketing strategy
- The hospital wanted Prita to pay Rp. 100 million for immaterial losses.
- Some singers organized clarified to help Prita.
- The campaign to help Prita was able to collect Rp. 825 million.

B. Answer these questions.

a. How do you define social media?

Answer: Social media is computer based technology that facilitates the sharing of idea, thoughts and information through the building of virtual network and communities.

b. Social media has been an integral part of modern life. How?

Answer: Social media has been an integral part of modern life as it allows people to interact in ways we could never imagine and we can easily access to the person we want to talk from any part of the world to any different part of the world.

c. Why do people use Facebook and YouTube?

Answer: People use Facebook to exchange news through text and YouTube to watch videos.

d. What is a blog? How can it be beneficial to us?

Answer: A blog is a regularly updated website or web page, typically one run by an individual or small group, that is written in an informal or conversational style.

It can be beneficial to us because we can improve our writing skills, connect with people, learn new things, and so on.

e. Was Prita's intention bad when she sent a message to her friends?

Answer: No, Prita's intention was not bad when she sent a message to her friends because she just wanted her friends to be more careful in accepting many kinds of services.

Follow us on:



f. How did Prita’s message become a big problem?

Answer: Prita’s message became a big problem after her friend shared it to a website (The People’s Forum).

g. Why was she convicted by the court?

Answer: She was convicted by the court for violating the law about using the ICT (Information and Communication Technology).

h. What was the purpose of the campaign, “Bantu Bebaskan Prita”?

Answer: The purpose of the campaign “Bantu Bebaskan Prita” was to collect money to help Prita so that she could pay the amercement.

i. How are people stronger than social media?

Answer: People are stronger than social media as they can easily think before they act and think before they speak.

Critical Thinking

a. Does social media have positive impact in the society? Discuss.

Answer: Social media is a tool that is becoming quite popular these days because of its user-friendly features. Social media platforms like Facebook, Instagram, Twitter and more are giving people a chance to connect with each other across distances. There are many positive ways in which social media can help to stay connected and support people’s wellbeing.

When we look at the positive aspect of social media, we find numerous advantages. The most important being a great device for education. All the information one requires is just a click away. Students can educate themselves on various topics using social media.

Furthermore, as more and more people are distancing themselves from newspapers, they are depending on social media for news. You are always updated on the latest happenings of the world through it. A person becomes more socially aware of the issues of the world.

In addition, it strengthens bonds with your loved ones. Distance is not a barrier anymore because of social media. For instance, you can easily communicate with your friends and relatives overseas.

Most importantly, it also provides a great platform for young budding artists to showcase their talent for free. You can get great opportunities for employment through social media too.

b. How do you compare virtual communication and face-to-face communication?

Follow us on:

Answer: Communication can be done by both face to face and online methods. Face to face communication enhances the quality of a person's life, whereas virtual communication has a new domain of possibilities for communicating with people.

The difference between face to face communication and virtual communication is that in the face to face communication, you can feel and see the presence of the other party, whereas, in virtual communication, you cannot see the other party to whom you are communicating with.

Face to face communication is a traditional method of communication that allows you of being able to see the opposite party you are talking to. This allows betterment in exchange for communication and information both for a person and to whom he is communicating. Even though the technology today is remarkable many still follow this kind of communication for clarity. Face to face communication is also an informal type of discussion between friends, family, colleagues, etc.

Virtual communication means when a person is communicating with another person via computer using the internet through email, etc. Due to technology development in a remarkable way, technology provides people with a significant way to communicate with other people and carry their business. We can talk and text anyone we want through mail anytime we want without having any boundaries for a person, whether the opposite person is online.

Writing

b. What is cyber bullying? What are its effects? How can it be stopped?

Answer: The use of electronic communication to bully a person, typically by sending messages of an intimidating or threatening nature is known as cyber bullying. Cyber bullying is a common occurrence in which children, teenagers, and even adults are targeted, humiliated, tortured, or threatened online. Rumors, threats, posting sexual comments, sharing the victim's personal information, and hate speech are all examples of harmful bullying behavior. Bullying is commonly found on social networking sites, SMS, email, and online gaming.

Cyberbullying is a multi-faced issue. Victims of cyberbullying feel unsafe even when they are at home. It is extremely difficult to avoid. It causes mental, emotional, and physical harm to the person because its effects can last for a long time. Low self-esteem, even suicidal tendencies, and a variety of negative emotional reactions may be experienced by the victim.

Follow us on:



Cyberbullying prevention is the need of the hour. It needs to be monitored and put an end to. There are various ways to tackle cyberbullying. Awareness is the key to prevent online harassment. We should make the children aware from an early age so they are always cautious. Moreover, parents must monitor their children's online activities and limit their usage. Most importantly, cyberbullying must be reported instantly without delay. This can prevent further incidents from taking place.

Grammar

B. Complete the following sentences using the correct prepositions of direction: to, toward, onto, or into.

- Prem drove Milan to the airport.
- The plane landed onto the runway.
- The kids climbed onto the monkey bars.
- Manish and Richa moved the table into the dining room.
- Ganesh almost fell into the river.
- Lalit and Sarita took the bus that was heading toward the university.

C. Complete the sentences with the correct preposition from the brackets.

- While we were hiking through the forest, we saw a mountain lion.
(across/through/along/under)
- The leopards walked in a circle round the baby giraffe before they attacked.
(into/towards/round/through)
- Go out of the building and turn left. (into/up/off/out of)
- She ran away from home when she was eighteen. (towards/away from/down/across)
- Raindrops ran down the windscreen making it difficult to see the road.
(into/up/down/over)
- Hemanta put the plate onto the table and began to eat his dinner.
(onto/into/up/off)
- The frightened deer disappeared into the forest. (up/onto/into/toward)
- We were driving towards the City Centre when we had an accident.
(up/into/towards/along)
- The smoke from the fire went up into the sky. (into/up/to/onto)

THE END

Follow us on:



If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

[English](#)

[Nepali](#)

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Language Development Unit 4 History and Culture (Qin Dynasty) Class 11 English Exercise

Gabriel Peralta

Ways With Words

A. Match the words with their meanings.

Brevity → lasting only for a short time

Conquest → victory over a place or people by use of military force

Resemblance → the state of being alike

Barbarian → a member of an uncivilized group of people of culture

Ally → one state united to another by a treaty or a league for a military purpose

Nobility → state of being noble in character, quality, or rank

Ruthlessness → character of having no pity or compassion

Decimation → the killing or destruction of a large number of a population

Harsh → cruel

Elixir → liquid that is believed to cure all ills

B. Find the following words in the text and use them in sentences of your own.

Invasion = The people live under a constant threat of **invasion**.

Disregard = The present article will **disregard** this distinction.

Paramount = His happiness was of **paramount** importance.

Populace = They had the **populace** on their side.

Revolt = The peasants' **revolt** was crushed by the king.

Assassination = He was in constant fear of **assassination** and distrusted all around him.

Serfdom = It has reduced us politically to **serfdom**.

D. Consult a dictionary and prepare a list of ten homographs.

Bass – a type of fish/low, deep voice

Bat – a piece of sports equipment/an animal

Evening – smoothing out/after sunset

Bear – to endure/animal

Close – connected/lock

Lean – thin/rest against

Bow – bend forward/front of a ship

Lead – metal/start off in front

Follow us on:



Skip – jump/miss out

Fair – appearance/reasonable

Comprehension

A. Complete the table with the correct information from the text.

Qin Dynasty Period	221-206 BCE
Zhou Dynasty Period	1046 – 256 BCE
Warring States Period	426 – 221 BCE
Unification of China by Qin	221 BCE
First Emperor of China	Qi Shi Huangdi
Death of Shi Huangdi	210 BCE
Liu Bang Period	206 BCE to 220 AD

B. Answer these questions.

a. Why is the Zhou Age called a feudal age?

Answer: The Zhou Age is called a feudal age because the Zhou period had followed the rule of feudalism.

b. What is the location advantage of the Qin?

Answer: The location advantage of Qin is the territory or area of the dynasty is well-bounded by mountains.

c. What contributed to the success in the warfare as described in the text?

Answer: The location of the state, the size of the army, and their expert use of the chariot contributed to their success in warfare.

d. Why did the Qin invite the foreign advisor, Shang Yang?

Answer: The Qin invited the foreign advisor, Shang Yang, due to the lack of intellectual people in Qin.

e. What were the key features of the Qin political system?

Answer: The key features of the Qin political system were fear and control.

f. How were the people treated during the Qin Period?

Answer: The people were treated almost like slaves in that period. People were supposed to contribute to all projects for the welfare of the Nation and were deprived from the approach of education.

g. Why did Shi Huangdi stop educating ordinary people?

Answer: Shi Huangdi stopped educating ordinary people because he believed that illiterate people can be controlled easily.

Follow us on:



h. What did the Qin achieve by the legalism in practice?

Answer: The Qin achieved a superior army, disciplined populace, obedient peoples, the great wall, great canal etc. with the help of legalism.

i. Why did Shi Huangdi never sleep in the same room for two consecutive nights?

Answer: Shi Huangdi never slept in the same room for two consecutive nights because of constant fear of assassination.

j. What are the everlasting marks of the Qin Dynasty?

Answer: The everlasting marks of the Qin Dynasty are as follows:

1. The Terracotta Army
2. Concept of Legalism
3. The Great Wall of China
4. The Grand Canal
5. Roads.

Critical Thinking

a. The Great Wall and the Taj Mahal are the creation of the autocratic rulers. Present your view for or against this statement.

Answer: Yes, I believe that the Great Wall of China and the Taj Mahal were created by autocratic rulers. The Great Wall of China was built to protect the northern empire of China from enemy attacks. There are nineteen walls. The first wall was built in the 7th century BC.

The Great Wall of China cannot be built by individual effort. As punishment, people were forced to undertake such projects by autocratic rulers. The text mentions that people throughout the empire must share responsibility with each other. If a person did not behave according to the rules, others had to contact them. If they did not, they were dismembered or beheaded. Those who made the greatest contribution to the state were highly rewarded, while those whose lives were deemed inconsequential were used as slaves in Shi Huangdi's construction projects such as the Great Wall of China, the Grand Canal, and the streets that grew up in the simple trade and travel.

Likewise, the Taj Mahal is the result of the autocratic ruler of the Mughal Emperor of India, Shah Jahan. It is believed that he built it to immortalize his wife Mumtaz. Shah Jahan is said to have cut off the artists' hands to prevent them from recreating the same type of structure. Historical facts show that the king was more inconsiderate than romantic. It took 20,000 workers to build the Taj Mahal over 20 years.

Everyone remembers the names of the emperors who built the structures, but no one is eager to explore the reality behind the structures. Therefore, The

Follow us on:



Great Wall and the Taj Mahal can be considered as the creation of the autocratic rulers.

b. How do you describe the pros and cons of feudalism?

Answer: Feudalism is defined as a dominant social system that existed in Europe during the Middle Ages in which people worked and fought for nobles who gave them protection and the use of land in return.

Pros of feudalism

Feudalism helped protect communities from the violence and warfare that broke out after the fall of Rome and the collapse of a strong central government in Western Europe. Feudalism secured Western Europe's society and kept out powerful invaders. The Lords were the major persons who keep away people's worries. Feudalism helped people to develop the qualities like loyalty, bravery, generosity, and humility.

Cons of feudalism

The concept of feudalism used to divide poor and rich people into two classes. It created class divisions among people. Common and weak people had to be dependent upon the Lords. Easy environment for powerful people to impose their power over others. Lords could easily do whatever they wanted. Peasants had to survive under the lords and they were not allowed to leave their lords' land. They were restricted in movement and even daily activities without their lords' permission.

Writing

a. Write an email to your friend living abroad stating the contributions of Prithvi Narayan Shah in the unification of Nepal.

Answer:

To: ariana23@gmail.com

From: austinadam56@gmail.com

Subject: Contributions of Prithivi Narayan Shah in the Unification of Nepal

Following the recent discussions on the above subject, here are more clarifications on the immeasurable contributions that Prithivi Narayan Shah brought to ensure that Nepal is what it is today.

Shah ended the divisions and infighting that existed between the four major Nepalese principalities of Gorkha, Malla, Patan, and Bhadgaon. Though the prince was a very ambitious member of the Shah ruling family of Gorkha, his

Follow us on:



personal involvement brought the wars among Malla, Patan, and Bhadgaon to an end.

He did not stop there. He resolved their long-term differences and consolidated them to become modern-day Nepal. Shah also worked hard to strengthen the unity of Nepal. This unity ended the many years when foreigners could easily invade any of the small states to conquer them.

No doubt, you will appreciate that this was not a mere achievement. While others were dividing nations, he united. While others conquered nations for their selfish interests, he strengthened Nepal for national unity.

From this brief email, you will appreciate that Shah made lasting contributions to Nepal we can call home today.

From your friend,
Austin

Grammar

B. Complete the texts below using the correct past forms of the verbs from the bracket.

a. The Maya established a very advanced civilisation in the jungles of the Yucatan. However, their culture disappeared (disappear) by the time Europeans first arrived (arrive) in the New World.

b. When I turned (turn) on the radio yesterday, I heard (hear) a song that was popular when I was (be) at the basic level of my study. It took (take) me back to some old memories.

c. I was looking for a job. I applied (apply) for a job last week. Fortunately, I got (get) it and now I am a job holder.

C. Choose the correct words from the list and complete the sentences with the correct verb form.

- Newton saw an apple falling from the tree.
- Ramesh Bikal wrote many popular stories.
- My jacket is expensive. It cost me Rs 5000.
- She got up early in the morning yesterday.
- When I was small, my father taught me at home.
- Why did you throw the cap away?

D. Put the verb into the correct form and complete the sentences.

Follow us on:

- a. I went to see the film, but I **did not** it. (not/enjoy)
- b. I **met** Rojina in town in a few days ago. (meet)
- c. It was very warm, so I **took off** my coat. (take off)
- d. Though the bed was very comfortable, I **did not sleep** very well. (not/sleep)
- e. I **started** new job last week. (start)
- g. He **was** too busy in the office yesterday. (be)
- h. Nita **invited** her to the party, but she didn't come. (invite)

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

[English](#)

[Nepali](#)

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Language Development Unit 5 Life and Love (The Looking Glass) Class 11 English Exercise

Anton Chekhov

Ways With Words

A. Match the words with their meanings.

- a. exhausted – tired
- b. apparent – clear
- c. vista – vision
- d. undulating – wavy
- e. destined – predetermined
- f. stuffy – suffocating, airless
- g. restrain – prevent, hinder

B. Write the meaning and word class of the following words. Then use them in sentences of your own.

1. **implore (verb)**: beg someone earnestly or desperately to do something.
→ I regretfully and respectfully **implore** you to help us.
2. **despair (noun)**: the complete loss or absence of hope
→ A few positive words can turn **despair** into hope.
3. **beseech (verb)**: ask (someone) urgently and fervently to do something
→ I will fall at his feet and **beseech** him.
4. **eloquent (adjective)**: able to express a feeling
→ He made an **eloquent** plea for peace.
5. **whirl (noun)**: a state of confusion
→ My head is starting to **whirl**.
6. **egoism (noun)**: the fact of being excessively conceited in oneself
→ His **egoism** stopped him from loving anyone but himself.
7. **agony (noun)**: extreme physical or mental suffering
→ She screamed again in **agony** as pain seared through her shoulder.
8. **delirious (adjective)**: in a state of wild excitement or ecstasy
→ The patient may be somewhat confused and **delirious**.
9. **delusive (adjective)**: giving a false or misleading impression
→ They were only coquetting a little with us, or bent on kindling **delusive** hopes.
10. **compensate (verb)**: reduce the bad effect of loss
→ His enthusiasm **compensates** for his lack of skill.

Follow us on:

11. **mortgage (noun)**: convey a property to a creditor as security on a loan
→ She didn't have enough money to pay the **mortgage**.
12. **brood (noun)**: a large family of children
→ He grew up among a lively **brood** of brothers and sisters.
13. **prelude (noun)**: an action or event serving as an introduction to something more important
→ A ceasefire had been agreed as a **prelude** to full peace negotiations.

D. Choose the correct word.

- a. Sarita was shocking / **shocked** to hear about earthquake.
b. I think that rainy days in winter are **depressing** / depressed.
c. The football match was very **exciting** / excited. I enjoyed it.
d. The meals at Delight Café are **satisfying** / satisfied.
e. I've got nothing to do. I'm boring / **bored**.
f. Tanka is very good at telling funny stories. He can be very **amusing** / amused.
g. The teacher's explanation was **confusing** / confused. Most of the students didn't understand it.
h. He is such a **boring** / bored person. He never wants to go out.
i. I will be surprising / **surprised** if she does well in her test.
j. Are you interesting / **interested** in politics?

E. Write the correct form of the adjective in the blanks as in the example.

- a. They frustrate me but they don't bore me. I never get **bored** when I study grammar.
b. If teachers want to interest the students, they must use **interesting** materials.
c. Certain stories interest almost everybody. For example, most students are **interested** in fairy tales.
d. Certain things frighten me, but I never get **frightened** when I speak English.
e. If I get a good grade, that excites me. And if I get more than ninety percent, I am really **excited**.

Comprehension

Answer these questions.

a. Who was Nellie? What did she use to dream of?

Answer: Nellie was the daughter of a landowner and general, a young and pretty girl. She used to dream of getting married.

b. What was she doing with the looking glass?

Answer: She was staring into the looking glass with exhausted, half-closed eyes.

Follow us on:



c. Why did she go to the doctor on one winter night?

Answer: She went to the doctor one night because her husband was ill.

d. What was Stepan Lukitch doing when she reached his bedroom?

Answer: Stepan Lukitch was lying on his bed when she reached his bedroom.

e. Why was the doctor not ready to go to see her husband?

Answer: The doctor was not ready to go to see her husband because the doctor was exhausted and ill himself seeing the typhus patients for the last three days.

f. Why did Stepan Lukitch suggest Nellie to go to the Zemstvo doctor?

Answer: Stepan Lukitch suggested Nellie to go to the Zemstvo doctor because he was ill himself and Nellie needed immediate treatment.

g. Nellie said, “Come, perform that heroic deed! Have pity on us!” What was that pity to be done?

Answer: The pity to be done was to treat Nellie’s husband.

h. When Nellie said, “I must have fallen asleep.” What does it mean?

Answer: It means that Nellie stopped, was awakened and was ready for facing the realities of life.

i. What is the main theme of the story?

Answer: The main theme of the story is devotion, loneliness, escape, fear, love, dedication, hope, defeat and independence.

Critical Thinking

a. “The looking glass (mirror)” is used as a symbol in the story. What does it symbolise?

Answer: In “Looking Glass,” the mirror symbolizes Nellie’s central character traits: her longing to be married and her habit of escaping her dull life into her elaborate fantasies. Protagonist Nellie is introduced dreamily gazing into her handheld mirror before falling asleep and seeing her “destined one” as clearly as if she were awake.

b. Chekhov employs the magic trick in the story, using a very elegant transition from reality to imagination to reality sequence. Discuss its relevance to life of young people.

Answer: Anton Chekhov’s short story “The Looking Glass” might be relevant to the life of young people due to its fairy-tale quality. It’s as if Nellie turns herself into a distressed princess; her husband becomes a kind of afflicted prince charming. It’s interesting that her husband doesn’t have a name. The lack of a name connects to other fairy tales for young readers in which the

Follow us on:

male love interest is never given a clear name. In Cinderella, for instance, the prince has no name.

Apart from a connection to fairy tales intended for young people, it could be argued that Chekov's short story underscores the ways in which young people tend to dramatize life. It's not uncommon for books, movies, and TV shows to portray young people as histrionic, overemotional, and hyperbolic. Nellie might represent the ways in which young people tend to glamorize love, suffering, and other things that might not be so enchanting in reality. Since some young people are fortunate enough to have not had to personally experience devastating hardship, they might be more inclined to invent their own. If their imagined scene grows too scary, they can, like Nellie, wake up, and it'll be done with.

When discussing the relevance of "The Looking to Glass" to young people, it might be insightful to note that all people, whatever their age, tend to be susceptible to fantasy, exaggeration, and flights of fancy. There are probably just as many overdramatic books, movies, and TV shows for adults as there are for young people. Furthermore, the sensational, slanted nature of social media and news outlets suggests that adults travel back and forth between reality and fantasy more often than they might like to admit.

Grammar

B. Match the expressions with their functions.

a.

A: What do you want to take?

B: I'll have tea, please.

→ Deciding

b.

A: Are you free this evening?

B: No, I'm going to meet my uncle.

→ Expressing a prior plan

c. **The day will be lovely tomorrow.**

→ Predicting a future action

d. **There is no cloud in the sky.**

It's going to be a lovely day.

→ Predicting with evidence

Follow us on:



e. Don't worry. I won't tell anyone.

→ Promising

f. I'll take you to the movies if you like.

→ Offering

g. I'll tell your parents what you did.

→ Threatening

C. Choose the correct answer.

a.

A: Are you busy this evening?

B: Yes, I am going to the movies. (will go/am going to)

b.

A: Where are you going for holiday this summer?

B: Not sure yet. Maybe I will go to Ilam. (will go/am going to)

c. I think you will like this movie. (will /are going to)

d. I can't join you at the party, I am going to be away for two weeks. (will /am going to)

e. This exercise looks really hard. I will help you. (will/am going to)

f.

A: Hello. Can I speak to Sima, please?

B: Just a minute. I will get her. (will/am going to)

g. Perhaps she will pass the exam. (will/is going to)

h. 'I haven't got my phone.' 'That's OK. I will lend you mine.' (will/am going to)

D. Complete the sentences using will or be going to with the verbs.

a.

Hari: Did you call Bina?

Prem: Oh, I forgot. I will call her now. (call)

b.

Sunita: Have you got a ticket for the play?

Hema: Yes, I am going to watch it on Saturday. (watch)

c. 'The alarm is ringing. It's making an awful noise.' 'OK, I will switch it off.' (switch)

Follow us on:

- d. Do you think they will like the the presents we got for them? (like)
- e. 'Lok is starting university tomorrow.' 'What is he going to study?' (he/study)
- f. If I meet him, I will tell him the news. (tell)
- g. The phone is ringing. I will answer it. (answer)
- h. If you don't stop bullying her, I will tell the teacher. (tell)

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

English

Nepali

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Language Development Unit 6 Health and Exercise (You May Scoff) Class 11 English Exercise

Emma Young

Ways With Words

A. Ten words in the bold face in the text correspond to the definitions below. Match the definitions with the corresponding words.

- a. in spite of what has just been said or referred to – **nevertheless**
- b. a strong desire or impulse – **urge**
- c. the ability to continue trying to do something, although it is very difficult – **determination**
- d. to attract attention to or emphasize something important – **highlight**
- e. arguing about things that are not important – **bickering**
- f. not having things or conditions that are usually considered necessary – **deprivation**
- g. continue to exist – **persist**
- h. soft loose flesh on a person's body – **flab**
- i. to improve or increase something – **boost**
- j. a limiting condition on something – **restriction**

Now, make sentences of your own using the same words in bold type.

- a. **Nevertheless**
the idea of the value of improving breeds is gaining ground.
- b. She fought back the **urge** to run.
- c. **Determination** was her motivation to stand up to the bully.
- d. Do you know what he **highlighted** in red?
- e. Maybe he meant he was sick of all the **bickering** with his family.

Follow us on:

- f. They are often targeted on areas of multiple **deprivation**
- g. If the symptoms **persist**, contact your doctor.
- h. I wish everyone who is fighting the **flab** the very best of luck.
- i. Drama also **boosts** the communication skills of students with special needs.
- j. Both these propositions were, with some **restrictions**, secured.

B. The words ‘restriction’ and ‘awareness’ are nouns with the suffixes ‘-ion’ and ‘-ness’. Make a list of as many words as you can which end in ‘-ion’ and ‘-ness’. Make a list of as many words as you can which end in ‘-ion’ and ‘ness’.

Answer:

‘-ion’

pollution
invention
invention
solution
substitution
partition
evolution

-‘ness’

politeness
goodness
badness
usefulness
Kindness

Comprehension

A. Write whether the following statements are True, False or Not Given.

- a. During the holidays people eat and drink more than usual. **True**
- b. Getting too little exercise and eating too much is the reason why people put on weight. **True**
- c. David Allison’s research involved studying rats under laboratory conditions. **False**
- d. You may need to go shopping for clothes if you come down with a cold. **True**
- e. Adenovirus-36 (AD-36) decreases the percentage of fat in the fat cells. **False**
- f. Vaccination against infections could be used in the future to prevent obesity. **True**

Follow us on:



- g. People under severe stress can experience breathing difficulties. **Not Given**
h. A study indicates that mice that have never been on a diet choose fatty food, when given a choice between high-calorie or low-calorie food products. **False**
i. Rajita Sinha has been studying the connection between brain activity and behaviour. **False**
j. Specific hormones regulate our appetite. **True**

B. Answer the following questions.

a. In what sense are the holidays a time of excess? When can a person gain weight?

Answer: In holidays people eat and drink more than usual. In this sense, holidays are a time of excess. A person can gain weight if he/she eats more food and do little exercise.

b. According to David Allison, which factor contributes to excess obesity?

Answer: According to David Allison, over eating and under exercise contributes to excess obesity.

c. What, according to Dhurandhar, can be the way of preventing fatness?

Answer: According to Dhurandhar, vaccination against infections can be the way of preventing fatness.

d. What is the relationship between chill and obesity? How can saying 'om' help reduce fatness?

Answer: Being chill, we can reduce our fatness. Saying 'Om' helps reduce fatness by taking control over the urges and stress related eating of high calorie foods.

e. Why is it necessary to be careful while buying plastic packaged fatty foods?

Answer: It is necessary to be careful while buying plastic packaged fatty foods because they contain endocrine disrupter chemicals that can affect our stomach.

f. Why does Nelson suggest avoiding blue wavelengths of light at night?

Answer: Nelson suggests avoiding blue wavelengths of light at night because these lights might increase the calories in human body.

g. How does breathing polluted air affect one's fatness?

Answer: Breathing polluted air affects one's fatness as polluted air activates (chronic) inflammation and disrupts the body's ability to burn energy.

h. What is the link between sleep and weight?

Answer: The link between sleep and weight is that sleep deprivation boosts body weight.

Follow us on:



AR Dinesh



puspas.com.np



Puspa Shrestha

Critical Thinking

a. What do you do to keep yourself fit? What food do you avoid and why?

Answer: Staying fit is a great way to improve our mood and overall health. Many people struggle with staying fit over time, but the benefits of fitness definitely outweigh the costs. With some commitment and motivation, we can maintain our physical fitness for years to come! I do regular exercising and take balanced diet to keep myself fit.

I avoid any junk food, foods which are high in sugar like donuts, cakes, cookies and the foods which are high in fat like processed meats, hydrogenated oil and shortening. I do so because it is one of the most important components of a fit lifestyle. Many people ignore it, but if we exercise and eat a lot of unhealthy foods like junk foods we will not get any fitter. This is because the junk food turns to fat almost immediately. Junk foods contain poor nutrition and are high in sodium and sugar. Because of this, our body sugar levels drop after consumption and we end up feeling fatigued with a major lack of energy.

b. Healthy citizens are the greatest asset of a country. What can a state do to keep her citizen healthy?

Answer: The success or failure of any government in the final analysis must be measured by the well-being of its citizens. Nothing can be more important to a state than its public health; the state's paramount concern should be the health of its people. A state can do the following things to keep her citizens healthy:

1. A state should provide peoples with proper health care facilities.
2. Proper education is also required for maintaining mental and social health, so emphasis on education must be given.
3. People must be made awared of the communicable diseases through advertisements and mass media.
4. Proper vaccination should be done against common communicable diseases.

Writing

a. Yoga can be good to stay physically and mentally healthy. Do you practice any yoga? Write an essay on the benefits of yoga.

Answer:

Benefits of Yoga

Yoga is an ancient art that connects the mind and body. It is an exercise that we perform by balancing the elements of our bodies. In addition, it helps us meditate and relax.

Follow us on:



Yoga has numerous benefits if we look at it closely. You will get relief when you practice it regularly. As it keeps away the ailments from our mind and body. In addition, when we practice several asanas and postures, it strengthens our body and gives us a feeling of well-being and healthiness.

Furthermore, yoga helps in sharpening our mind and improving our intelligence. We can achieve a higher level of concentration through yoga and also learn how to steady our emotions. It connects us to nature like never before and enhances our social well-being.

21st of June is celebrated as International Day of Yoga where people are made aware of the benefits of yoga. Yoga is a great gift to mankind which helps us keep better and maintain our health. You also develop a higher patience level when you practice yoga which also helps in keeping the negative thoughts away. You get great mental clarity and better understanding.

In short, yoga has several benefits. Everyone must practice it to keep their health maintained and also benefit from it. It is the secret to living a healthy and long life without the use of any artificial means like medicines or any other shortcuts of any kind.

b. How can a person be mentally healthy? Provide about ten tips to a person to stay mentally fresh and healthy.

Answer: An important part of keeping fit and healthy is to take care of your own mental health. There are plenty of things you can do to help make sure you keep yourself mentally healthy. Some of the tips to keep the mind healthy are as follows:

1. Get plenty of sleep
2. Eat well
3. Take a break
4. Avoid alcohol, smoking and drugs
5. Get plenty of sunlight
6. Manage stress
7. Activity and exercise
8. Do something you enjoy
9. Connect with others and be sociable
10. Be a tourist in your own town

Grammar

B. Complete the sentences by choosing the correct verbs from the brackets.

a. Everyone has (has/have) problems in their life. Countries also have (has/have) problems, and so does (do/does) the world. One of the

Follow us on:



greatest problems is (is/are) the growing population. The population in some countries is (is/are) huge.

b. A number of my friends love (love/loves) riding bicycles, but neither my brother nor my sister owns (own/owns) a cycle. At 4 o'clock, either my mother or father is (is/are) coming to pick me up in a car.

c. The pair of shoes on the floor is (is/are) mine. The shoes were (was/were) made in China. The three thousand rupees I spent on them was (was/were) worth it.

C. Are the following sentences correct? If not, correct them.

a. **Everyone of the workers receive the same benefits.**
Everyone of the workers receives the same benefits.

b. **There is two gerbils in my bathroom.**
There are two gerbils in my bathroom.

c. **Both of my friends live in Kathmandu.**
Both of my friends live in Kathmandu.

d. **Scissors is used to have our hair cut.**
Scissors are used to have our hair cut.

e. **You and your friends are welcome to join us.**
You and your friends are welcome to join us.

f. **Are the news on at five or six?**
Is the news on at five or six?

g. **The man with all his children live in the city.**
The man with all his children lives in the city.

h. **Mathematics are Prem's favourite subject, while Economics is Alina's favourite subject.**
Mathematics is Prem's favourite subject, while Economics is Alina's favourite subject.

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Follow us on:



Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

English

Nepali

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Language Development Unit 7 Ecology and Development (Foresters without Diplomas) Class 11 English Exercise

Wangari Maathai

Ways With Words

A. Match the words with their meanings.

Constituency – electoral district

Pursue – to follow in an effort to overtake or capture

Infiltrate – to enter or gain access to (an organization, place, etc.) secretly and gradually

Nomadic – living the life of roaming

Anatomy – art of studying the different parts of any organized body

Subversive – seeking or intended to overthrow an established system or institution

C. Make two other words by using each prefix given above and use them in sentences.

mal

Malignancy – This should be followed up to exclude malignancy.

Malware – Malware and viruses could infect their computers.

mis

Misspell – t's difficult to see misspell in a sentence.

Mismatch – Their marriage was a mismatch they had little in common.

un

Uncover – Erin never does get to uncover his true identity.

Unsafe – If it weren't so unsafe, he'd take her with him

in

Inedible – The food on the flight was totally inedible.

Incapable – She'd been incapable of empathy or remorse.

pre

Prevent – I'm sorry to prevent you from seeing him.

Preplan – Now, it is time to preplan new trip.

Follow us on:



il

Illogical – Not being feminist to me is just totally illogical.

Illusion – These will give the illusion of a cinched waist.

dis

Discomfort – Elisabeth’s discomfort was evident.

Disengage – Overcharge the Plasma Pistol and disengage a vehicle.

im

Immature – Katie had always been immature, maybe even a little lazy.

Immortal – The Dark One was going to turn her Immortal.

Re

Return – I have something to return to you.

Rewrite – We can rewrite history as much as we like.

ir

Irremovable – Nowadays, most of smartphone have irremovable battery.

Irrational – These are isolated cases of irrational numbers.

de

Deactivate – At this point your account will immediately be deactivated.

Defrost – A basic microwave oven should be able to cook, defrost and reheat.

non

Nonstick – You’ll need a nonstick cooking spray.

Nonverbal – Their nonverbal exchange made me smile.

Comprehension

Answer these questions.

a. What did Maathai decide to do for the community?

Answer: Maathai decided to create jobs for the community.

b. Mention the problems faced by women in Kenya.

Answer: The problems faced by women in Kenya were malnutrition, lack of food and adequate water, unemployment and soil erosion.

c. Why did the speaker go to the women to talk about planting trees?

Answer: The speaker went to the women to talk about planting trees because the women in Kenya were most affected by the problems of firewood, malnutrition, lack of food and adequate water, unemployment and soil erosion, and were concerned about children and the future.

Follow us on:



d. What is the most important achievement of the movement described in the text?

Answer: The most important achievement of the movement described in the text is women were independent, had acquired knowledge and techniques, had become empowered. They have been teaching each other.

e. Why were the foresters' ways not helpful to the women for planting trees?

Answer: The foresters' ways were not helpful to the women for planting trees because they have complicated the ways of dealing with a very simple thing like looking for seeds and planting trees.

f. When and how did she start The Green Belt Movement?

Answer: She started The Green Belt Movement on World Environment Day by planting the first seven trees

g. Why do the donors want to provide money to the women?

Answer: The donors want to provide money to the women because their efforts were providing satisfactory results.

h. What happened when the speaker criticized the political leadership?

Answer: The speaker has been portrayed as subversive when the speaker criticized the political leadership.

i. Mention the agencies that supported her movement.

Answer: The agencies that supported her movement are as follows:

- United Nations Development Fund for Women
- Danish Voluntary Fund
- Norwegian Agency for International Development
- African Development Foundation

Critical Thinking

a. Do you think that the title “Foresters without Diplomas” is suitable to the essay? How?

Answer: Yes I think that the essay's title, “Foresters without Diplomas,” is appropriate. The writer and her team initially summoned the foresters to show how they grow trees to the ladies. Because they possessed degrees, the foresters proved to be very difficult to work with. They developed complicated ways for coping with outwardly basic tasks like searching for seeds and growing trees. Finally, the writer and her colleagues instructed the ladies on how to do the task using common sense, which they accomplished. They were able to search the area for seeds and learn to identify seedlings as they germinate from seeds that had fallen to the ground. Women did not have the same opportunities as males.

Follow us on:

b. Can a person make a difference in a society? Discuss with an example from a person who has made a difference in your society.

Answer: It's easy to feel like one person can't make a difference. The world has so many big problems, and they often seem impossible to solve. We know that while many common ways to do well, such as becoming a doctor, have less impact than you might first think; others have allowed certain people to achieve an extraordinary impact. In other words, one person can make a difference, but you might have to do something a little unconventional.

Numerous folks have made an outstanding and significant change, not only for our society but the entirety of all people, the world over. Some of those examples are Dr Jonas Salk found the vaccine that prevented people from contracting Polio, Thomas Edison discovered the light bulb, a major innovation to society, the world over. So we can see that a person can make a positive difference in the lives of people not in our society but throughout the world.

Writing

c. Write an essay on 'The Community Forest in Nepal'. Describe how these community forests have contributed to maintain ecology in our environment.

Answer:

The Community Forest in Nepal

The Community Forestry Program in Nepal is a global innovation in participatory environmental governance that encompasses well-defined policies, institutions, and practices. The program addresses the twin goals of forest conservation and poverty reduction. As more than 70 percent of Nepal's population depends on agriculture for their livelihood, community management of forests has been a critically important intervention.

Through legislative developments and operational innovations over three decades, the program has evolved from a protection-oriented, conservation-focused agenda to a much more broad-based strategy for forest use, enterprise development, and livelihood improvement. By April 2009, one-third of Nepal's population was participating in the program, directly managing more than one-fourth of Nepal's forest area.

The immediate livelihood benefits derived by rural households bolster strong collective action wherein local communities actively and sustainably manage forest resources. Community forests also became the source of diversified investment capital and raw material for new market-oriented livelihoods. Community forestry shows traits of political, financial, and ecological sustainability, including the emergence of a strong legal and regulatory framework, and robust civil society institutions and networks.

Follow us on:

However, a continuing challenge is to ensure equitable distribution of benefits to women and marginalized groups. Lessons for replication emphasize experiential learning, the establishment of a strong civil society network, flexible regulation to encourage diverse institutional modalities, and responsiveness of government and policymakers to a multistakeholder collaborative learning process.

Grammar

c. Underline the verb in each sentence and write whether it is transitive, intransitive or linking.

a. His father looks handsome.

looks = linking verb

b. Bhawana drinks milk every day.

drinks = transitive verb

c. He became a watchman.

became = linking verb

d. This bread smells good.

smells = linking verb

e. The dog barked loudly.

barked = intransitive verb

f. He chased the dog.

chased = transitive verb

g. My sister swims fast.

intransitive verb

h. He painted a picture.

painted = transitive verb

i. Radhika always asks questions.

asks = transitive verb

j. Anjana has a long hair.

has = linking verb

k. Hungry lion roars.

intransitive verb

Follow us on:

l. He tried again and again.

tried = intransitive verb

m. The weather is hot.

is = linking verb

n. Owls hide in the daytime.

hide = intransitive verb

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

[English](#)

[Nepali](#)

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Language Development Unit 8 Humour and Satire (A Few Kind Words for Superstition) Class 11 English Exercise

Robertson Davies

Ways With Words

A. Match the following.

transcendental – spiritual, nonphysical or mystical
deplore – to feel or express strong disapproval of (something)
absolve – set free from blame, guilt, or responsibility; release
juju – a charm or fetish used by some West African people
crude – natural state
chronicle – a written record of historical events

B. Find the contextual meanings of the following words from the text and then use them in sentences of your own.

a. **condemn:** to express disapproval

Sentence: Don't condemn him before you hear the evidence.

b. **terror:** a feeling of extreme fear

Sentence: He lived in terror of being caught.

c. **unbidden:** without being asked, invited or expected

Sentence: She shook her head to remove the unbidden thoughts.

d. **persist:** to continue to exist

Sentence: The reporter persisted with his questioning.

e. **devout:** having or showing strong religious feeling/ religious

Sentence: His grandfather is a devout Buddhist.

f. **banish:** to make somebody/ something go away

Sentence: The good wizard protected the temple with a spell to banish evil spirits.

g. **creed:** a system of principles or religious beliefs

Sentence: Other countries have adopted this political creed enthusiastically.

Follow us on:



h. hasten: to make something happen more quickly

Sentence: The edge in his voice made her hasten her step.

i. sober: serious and sensible

Sentence: He was as sober as a judge.

j. scorn: feel or express contempt or disdain for

Sentence: He felt scorn for his working-class parents.

k. yearning: a strong and emotional desire

Sentence: They had a deep yearning for their homeland.

l. aloof: not friendly/ disinterested in other people

Sentence: His aloof response made her look up.

m. swarthy: having dark skin

Sentence: My friend is skinny, with a swarthy complexion.

n. humbler: having or showing a modest or low estimate of one's importance

Sentence: The leader of a third troop took a humbler tone.

C. Trace the origins of each of the following words finding such explanations in a dictionary or the Internet. Then make sentences by using each word.

Minatory: From Latin minatorius

Meaning = threatening

Sentence: The hate group left a **minatory** threat in the form of a burning cross on the couple's lawn.

Placated: From Latin Placast

Meaning = make somebody less angry

Sentence: She was well **placated** when he did go on to choose Marley.

Cajoled: From French Cajoler

Meaning = pursuit somebody gently

Sentence: I managed to **cajole** her out of leaving too early.

Antedates: From Latin ante

Meaning = predate; put earlier date; occur earlier than something

Sentence: This event **antedates** the discovery of America by several centuries.

Proliferated: From Latin prolifer

Meaning = increase greatly; give birth

Sentence: Bead stores seem to have **proliferated** the American landscape.

Follow us on:



Philter: From Greek philtron

Meaning = magical tonic; love potion

Sentence: He's just full of magic philter.

D. List any five words found in an English dictionary beginning with the prefix 'super-.' What common meaning do all of these words share? How do the words in your list change meaning if you eliminate the prefix?

a.

Superimpose = lay over; place on the top

Impose = enforce something; insist on something

b.

Superman = exceptional man; man with strength power

Man = adult male human; person

c.

Supernatural = super human; beyond the nature

Natural = related to nature; produced by nature

d.

Supernumerary = extra; exceeding; many of

Numerary = number; of numbers

e.

Superstar = above other artist; more popular artist

Star = mass of gas in space; popular artist

Comprehension

Answer these questions.

a. According to the author, what are the four types of superstition?

Answer: According to the author, the four types of superstition are Vain Observances, Divination, Idolatry and Improper Worship of the True God.

b. Which language is the word 'superstition' derived from? What does it mean?

Answer: The word 'superstition' is derived from the Latin language 'supersisto'. It means to stand in terror of the Deity.

c. How do psychologists understand superstition?

Answer: Psychologists understand superstition as a compulsion that neurosis does not banish.

Follow us on:



d. How does superstition differ from religion?

Answer: The difference between Religion and Superstition is that they differ in the belief of a community. Religion is confined to worshipping Gods and devoting them. Superstition is just a belief that relies on rituals performed over them.

e. What is the belief of some people in Middle Europe about sneezing?

Answer: Some people of Middle Europe believe that when a person sneezes, his/her soul is absent from body for a moment and they hasten to bless him.

f. In the author's view, why are people so fascinated about superstition?

Answer: In the author's view, people are so fascinated about superstition because people's desire to know their fate, and to have some hand in deciding it.

Critical Thinking

a. What is the key takeaway of this essay? Do you think that this essay is satirical? Why?

The essay aims to convey the message that we are following superstition knowingly and unknowingly. Every individual no matter how logical or rational he/she is, carries superstitions. The essayist believes that many superstitions are widespread and too old that must have been risen from a depth of human mind that is indifferent to any race or creed.

The essay is satirical in the sense that it satirizes to those educated and uneducated people who are the victim of it. Throwing salt over the left shoulder after spilling it or avoiding walking under a ladder, resolving a matter related to university affairs by consulting the I Ching, placing jujus, lucky coins and other bringers of luck on the desks of the candidates in an examination hall, etc. are some of the superstitious activities he satires on.

b. Can education bring change in the belief of superstition? Present your arguments to support your answer.

Answer: Education may or may not bring change in the belief of superstition. Education can make people less superstitious. At least educated people are more likely to send the sick to the hospital, than to call priests to cast out demons in order to cure the sick. Education provides an understanding of the diseases, the cause and the cure of the diseases.

Superstitions are due to fear of the unknown. Once the unknown becomes known, there is no longer any superstition. Education has the potential to change superstitious beliefs. It enhances thinking abilities and intellect. People

Follow us on:



who are educated are less prone to be superstitious, and they may educate others about it too.

Now the question is can education eradicate superstition? It is only possible when human beings gain complete knowledge of everything, then education is able to eradicate superstition. For the present, education does reduce a lot of superstitious beliefs around the world.

Writing

a. Write an essay on superstitions that exists in your community in about 250 words.

Answer:

Superstitions in My Community

Superstitions are as old as man. The earliest men who had no scientific knowledge fell on easy prey to superstition. Thus, illiteracy and lack of knowledge and capacity to reason out are the hotbeds which generate and perpetuate superstition.

Mahatma Buddha was probably the first great man to expound and explain the value and significance of reason which eliminated superstition altogether. He emphasized that everything should be thoroughly studied, judged and tested before being believed. Later, many other great men like Guru Nanak and Kabir exhorted the people to shun superstitions.

Many people may believe that faith is also a form of superstition. But, as we can see if we think deeply, there is a difference. Faith is a positive factor whereas superstition is a negative factor.

Earlier, superstition was rampant in villages. The belief in ghosts was common. It was believed that these ghosts operated at night and that they were visible to some people and invisible to others. Taking advantage of this many clever men burned into tan tricks and controllers of ghosts. They cheated the gullible villagers. Unfortunately, even at present, such clever men are at work.

There are many kinds of superstitions which are observed by common people. The throbbing of eyes, a cat crossing our way, coming across a Brahmin—all these are believed to be inauspicious. The cawing of a crow indicated the possibility of a guest visiting our house that day. Similarly, if we come across a sweeper early in the morning, it is considered to be auspicious.

We should try to develop a scientific spirit of mind and judge everything on the basis of reason.

Follow us on:



b. “Superstition is prevalent in every walk of life.” Argue for or against this statement.

Answer: Yes it is true that superstition is prevalent in every walk of life. The man started to believe in superstitions when he got a feeling that humans are at the mercy of natural elements. Similarly, some superstitions were also created because of social values. As a result, people worship forces of nature for a long time.

The Greeks and Pagans used to worship elements of nature in the form of Gods and Goddesses. The same is the case with Nepalese tradition. People continue to worship the sun, moon, stars, planets, plants and more believing these things have the power to influence our lives. You might have heard ‘it is because of the impact of some evil star’ and more when a disease overtakes or disaster strikes. Even the people in the West have been believing in them. You will find instances in Shakespeare’s plays where he includes things like omens, witches and more.

In fact, ever since a long time till date, people still consider the number 13 to be unlucky. Similarly, salt spilling over the dinner table is also an ill-omen. In Nepal, people consider the black cat crossing the way to be unlucky. Similar is the case of an owl hooting or a dog wailing.

If we look at it closely, there is no logic as such behind the beliefs in superstitions. However, they have grown age-old and despite all the scientific advancement, they are not going anywhere soon and hence they are prevalent in every walk of life.

Grammar

B. Put the verb into the correct form, present simple or present continuous.

- Nisha speaks (speak) English very well.
- Hurry up! We are waiting (wait) for you.
- Excuse me! Do you speak (you / speak) English?
- She is having (have) a shower in bathroom.
- How often do you read (you / read) a newspaper?
- I’m sorry, I don’t understand (not / understand). Can you speak more slowly?
- You can turn off the radio. I am not listening (not / listen) to it.

Follow us on:

h. I usually get up (get up) at 5 o'clock every morning.

i. Look! The river is flowing (flow) very fast.

j. Amrita does not seem (not/seem) very happy at the moment.

C. Are the underlined verbs in the correct form? Correct them where necessary.

a. Water boils at 100° C.

→ Water boils at 100° C.

b. The water boils. Can you turn it off?

→ The water is boiling. Can you turn it off?

c. I must go now. It gets late.

→ I must go now. It is getting late.

d. This sauce's tasting really good.

→ This sauce tastes really good.

e. I'm thinking this is your key.

→ I think this is your key.

f. Are you believing in God?

→ Do you believe in God?

g. I usually go to school on foot.

→ I usually go to school on foot.

h. Look! That man tries to open the door of her car.

→ Look! That man is trying to open the door of her car.

i. The moon is going round the earth.

→ The moon goes round the earth.

j. I'm getting hungry. Let's go and eat.

→ I'm getting hungry. Let's go and eat.

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Follow us on:



Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

English

Nepali

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Language Development

Unit 9 Democracy and Human Rights (Inauguration Speech of Nelson Mandela)

Class 11 English Exercise

Robertson Davies

Ways With Words

A. Find the words in the text that mean the same as the following. The first letters are given.

- the system that completely separated black people from white people (**apartheid**)
- formal objection (**protest**)
- an ethnical group of people (**tribe**)
- an act undertaken to achieve a set goal (**campaign**)
- the formal beginning of any movement (**inauguration**)
- a strong feeling of excitement and happiness (**exhilaration**)
- being set free from legal, social, or political restrictions (**emancipation**)

B. Find these words in a dictionary and write their meanings as they are used in the text.

a. liberty

the state of being free within society from oppressive restrictions imposed by authority on one's way of life, behaviour, or political views.

b. conflict

a serious disagreement or argument, typically a protracted one.

c. ideology

a system of ideas and ideals, especially one which forms the basis of economic or political theory and policy.

d. oppression

prolonged cruel or unjust treatment or exercise of authority.

e. privilege

a special right, advantage, or immunity granted or available only to a particular person or group.

f. dignity

the state or quality of being worthy of honour or respect.

Follow us on:

g. surrender

stop resisting to an enemy or opponent and submit to their authority.

h. reconciliation

the restoration of friendly relations.

C. The 'd' or 'ed' in the following verbs have different pronunciation. Put these verbs in the correct box.

[asked, killed, missed, ended, decided, washed, visited, lasted, watched, picked, smiled, fixed, walked, blessed, brushed, stopped, wanted, reached, laughed, enjoyed]

/t/

asked, missed, washed, watched, picked, fixed, walked, blessed (v), brushed, stopped, reached, laughed

/d/

killed, smiled

/ɪd/

ended, decided, visited, lasted, blessed (adj), wanted, enjoyed

D. Put these nouns into the correct box according to the pronunciation of the plural suffix: s/es.

[cats, dogs, horses, houses, books, roofs, boys, rooms, girls, noises, shops, trees, pages, babies, benches, classes]

/s/

cats, books, roofs, shops

/z/

dogs, boys, rooms, girls, trees,

/ɪz/

horses, houses, noises, pages, babies, benches, classes

Comprehension

Answer these questions.

a. What were the restrictions imposed on the Blacks in South Africa?

Answer: The restrictions imposed on the Blacks in South Africa were Racial segregation, and political and economic discrimination.

Follow us on:

b. Why was Mandela arrested?

Answer: Mandela was arrested because he was charged with organizing an armed wing of the African National Congress (ANC).

c. How did he describe racism and racial oppression?

Answer: He described racism and racial oppression as the pernicious ideology and practice.

d. Why did he thank all the international guests?

Answer: He thanked all the international guests for coming to take possession about peace and justice with the people of his country.

e. Why did he think that people in his country had achieved political emancipation?

Answer: He thought that people in his country had achieved political emancipation to liberate themselves from the continuing bondage of poverty, deprivation, suffering, gender and other discrimination.

f. What is the main point of Mandela's speech?

Answer: The main point of Mandela's speech is that people of South Africa should build a society where there will be justice, peace and equality for all peoples.

Critical Thinking

a. What does Mandela mean when he says – a rainbow nation at peace with itself and the world?

Answer: When Mandela says – a rainbow nation at peace with itself and the world he means that South Africans should build a society where both black and white will be able to walk, talk with each other without any fear. We know that rainbow is the combination of seven different colors. So by saying a rainbow nation he is trying to convey us a message that whenever all the peoples unite as like the colors in the rainbow then only there will be peace.

In South Africans cultures, the rainbow symbolizes hope and bright future. South Africa is referred to a Rainbow Nation to describe the unity of various cultural, racial or ethnic groups in the country. During the segregation period, peoples were divided on the basis of skin color. Mandela wants them to live and work together in unity like the colors in a rainbow. He wished they could forget the ferocious and brutal past and put their hand in hand with each other and maintain a peaceful nation.

b. Mandela should have avenged those who imprisoned him for such a long period. Instead, he followed the path of reconciliation. Why do you think he did so?

Follow us on:



Answer: If Mandela has avenged those who had imprisoned him then he won't be able to reach his destination. Mandela led his country wisely and promoted national reconciliation. He was a man of true words. He fought for his own people for a long period and was also imprisoned when he raised his voice against the authorities. However, after coming out of jail he did not avenge those who had put him in trouble. Because he believed that avenge and enmity cause disorder among people and by doing so he would lose the support of the majority.

c. Why and how have societies struggled with segregation in the world? Do you find any evidence of segregation in your society? Discuss.

Answer: Segregation is the separation or isolation of a race, class, or ethnic group by enforced or voluntary residence in a restricted area, by barriers to social intercourse or separate educational facilities or by other discriminatory means. Many people of the world are struggling with social separation problems in the world. Racial segregation is one of many types of segregation, which can range from deliberate and systematic persecution through more subtle types of discrimination to self-imposed separation. Caste segregation is one of the most common forms of segregation in the Hindu culture. Any types of segregation can lead to chaos and violence.

Yes I have found the evidence of segregation in my society. Although, the Nepalese Constitution Law doesn't allow any segregation in terms of religion, caste and ethnicity but still it is prevalent in our society. However, since the unification of Nepal in the 18th century, Nepal's various non-Hindu ethnic nationalities and tribes, previously called "Matwalis" (alcohol-drinkers) and now termed as "Adivasi/Janajati" (indigenous/nationalities), have been incorporated within the caste hierarchy to varying degrees of success. Despite the forceful integration by the state into the pan-Hindu social structure, the traditionally non-Hindu groups and tribes do not necessarily adhere to the customs and practices of the caste segregation.

Writing

a. Nepal has topsy-turvy political history. Many changes have been observed in different times. Write a short biography of any Nepali freedom fighter incorporating the changes brought under his/her leadership.

Answer:

Ganesh Man Singh

Ganesh Man Singh was born on November 9, 1915 and was commander of the popular 1990 Janaandolan. Singh was also one of the main leaders of the Nepali Congress movement of 1951, which overthrew the Rana regime. More

Follow us on:



than anything else, Ganesh Man was a rebel and a freedom fighter. He was a popular hero and his exploits are legendary. He was a man of small proportions but charismatic, fearless, and physically very strong. He was never afraid of taking risks in his political career. He was a straightforward and frank leader in dealing with all.

Ganesh Man was a rare breed amongst Nepali politicians—a man of integrity. He demonstrated his greatness through his leadership, rising above petty personal interests. Recognising his outstanding contribution to the field of democracy and human rights, Ganesh Man was honored by the United Nations with the ‘Human Rights Award’ in 1993. He was the first statesman from South Asia to receive this prestigious award. He also received the ‘United States Peace Run Prize’ in 1990 for his contribution to peace in Nepal and the world. He was also decorated with the ‘U Thant Peace Award’. He has become immortalised as a great leader that the nation and its citizens, without any political barriers, feel proud of. No other national leader has been able to fill the political vacuum after his death.

Grammar

B. Complete the sentences with should or shouldn't. Use one of these verbs.
[drink, visit, leave, roam, quit]

- You have really done a wonderful job. I recommend you shouldn't leave it.
- That's a very dangerous area. Tourists shouldn't visit there.
- I'm going to be late. Do you think I should leave now?
- Children shouldn't drink sugary drinks. It's not very healthy.
- I have lots of homework. I shouldn't roam here and there today.

C. Put in had better or should.

- I think you **should** learn English to enroll a university course.
- It's a great film. You **should** go and see it.
- I have to meet my friend in ten minutes. I **had better** go now or I'll be late.
- These biscuits are delicious. You **should** try one.
- We **had better** get to the airport by 2 pm or else we may miss the flight.
- When people are driving, they **should** keep their eyes on the road.
- I **should** get up early tomorrow. I've got a lot to do.

THE END

Follow us on:



If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

[English](#)

[Nepali](#)

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Language Development Unit 10 Home Life and Family Relationship (The Tattered Blanket) Class 11 English Exercise

Kamala Das

Ways With Words

A. Fill in the blanks with an appropriate words.

- All my efforts to convince her for the tour were futile.
- The lost traveller huddled up under a shelter made of branches and leaves.
- Her rude behaviour was the main cause of irritation for him.
- She moved awkwardly in the room, thinking that I was watching.
- She is mumbling something, but I can't hear her.
- When I met my sister after a long time, she talked to me in a feeble voice.

B. Tick (✓) the correct words that are similar in meaning to the underlined words.

- Rupa studied Science reluctantly due to her father's pressure.
ii. unwillingly
- She moved her fingers exasperatedly through her hair.
iv. annoyingly
- My grandmother is over eighty. She lifted her hands feebly.
iii. weakly
- She is wearing a tattered shawl.
ii. torn
- I have to work at two jobs to make ends meet in this expensive city.
iv. earn just enough money

D. Syllable

c. Consult an English dictionary and find the number of syllables in the following words.

bury: bur-y
2 syllables

development: de-vel-op-ment
4 syllables

Follow us on:



syllabic: syl-lab-ic
3 syllables

Vowel: vow-el
2 syllables

education: ed-u-ca-tion
4 syllables

discipline: dis-ci-pline
3 syllables

examination: ex-am-i-na-tion
5 syllables

children: chil-dren
2 syllables

separately: sep-a-rate-ly
4 syllables

pronunciation: pro-nun-cia-tion
5 syllables

Comprehension

Answer the following questions.

a. Why didn't the mother recognise her son Gopi?

Answer: The mother didn't recognize her son Gopi because she was eighty years old and lost her memory.

b. Why is the sister living with her mother?

Answer: The sister is living with her mother because she is a widow and there is nobody to take care of her mother.

c. What is the sister's attitude towards her brother?

Answer: She is serious towards her brother's behaviour.

d. Does the son love his mother very much? How do you know that?

Answer: Yes, the son love his mother very much. He shows his love by bending down and bringing his face close to his mother's wrinkled cheeks.

e. What does the mother actually need: a blanket or the warmth of her son's love?

Follow us on:



Answer: The mother actually needs the warmth of her son's love. Here, the blanket symbolizes love and care.

f. What does the phrase 'the tattered blanket' mean? Is it only the blanket that is tattered?

Answer: The phrase 'the tattered blanket' means the hurt feelings of his mother.

g. The son says, 'Amma can't remember who I am'. Do you think that he remembered his mother? Why didn't he answer when his sister asked, 'Do you remember your Amma?'

Answer: He didn't answer her question because he can't do so as it had been a year since he wrote to his mother and more than five years since he saw her.

Critical Thinking

a. What can be the expectations of the parents from their offspring at the old age?

Answer: Every human is different. Often times what one desires the other does not even see fit. Our parents are also one among the same crowd, like us. There must be some expectations they have from their children, our work is to understand and fulfill them.

When people get old, they get sensitive and even the slightest of things hurt them. Same goes for the elderly parent. They have lived a full life, worked, earned respect, and fulfilled their responsibilities. So when they are old, they want us not to forget this and treat them with dignity and respect.

After retirement the elderly people do not find purpose and meaning in their day, most of the time they do not have routine. So most of them stay usually alone at home. Often times we hear them complain that no one spends time with them, they miss company, they have nothing to do, no one to talk to, etc.

Your father was the one taking care of everything before he retired, your mother was so busy all her life looking after her family and now because they are old they have near to nothing to do during their day. They want their children to involve them in conversations, decisions or any other big and small thing.

These were just some common things that the elderly parents miss and want from you or want their children to know. But again every person and their wants are different, so we do the things according to our parent's desire.

b. Some children who live in a distance tend to be indifferent to the feelings of their parents. Why do you think they are like that? Discuss.

Follow us on:

Answer: There are various reasons for children to live in a distance from their parents. The reason may be study, job, business and so on. For achieving their goal and fulfilling their self desires, they have to invest more time and efforts and hence their relation with parents becomes weaker due to of their busy schedule. When children live in a distance, they gradually keep away relation from their parents. Finally, it creates a gap or distance between parents and their children. In today's world children think that money and success are more important than the parents' feelings. They do hard work for earning and saving but not making the parents happy.

Some children begin a new life with their family far from their parents. Their wife and children become more important than their old-age parents. That is why they have no time to call them and visit their parents. This indifference not only degrades the relationship between the parents and their children but also makes the parents live a lonely and miserable life.

c. A mother's love is everlasting and indispensable. Justify.

Answer: There is nothing that can come close to the love that a mother feels for her children. Women are inherently good mothers. Till birth women carry their young and then continue their love & affection throughout their childhood and even into adulthood. Every Mother always makes sure that their children are safe and happy throughout their childhood. It is the love for their child that a mother feels that drives these feelings.

After birth, a child finds his mom as the first friend who plays with him along with extra care and nourishment. Without any expectation, a mother keeps on working for the betterment of her child. She plays all roles including mom like a mentor, a teacher, a friend, a caretaker. When a child born; it is the mother who easily understands the feelings or requirements of her child. She spends every second around her child for fulfilling his all needs. Since childhood, our mother keeps telling us what is wrong and what is right in a manner to build us as a good human being and also encourage us to do good things in life.

We as a child always take our mother for granted but without her our life becomes worthless. Mother is a precious gift by God which we need to keep with love and care. She does her job of motherhood with a pure heart and complete devotion. The first teacher is a mother for any child and if he keeps learning life's lessons under her guidance nothing can stop him in achieving the heights of success.

Grammar

B. Complete the following sentences with however, although or in spite of.

Follow us on:



- a. **In spite of**, the fact that he is an octogenarian; he still leads an active life.
- b. I still enjoyed the week **although**, the weather was bad.
- c. He has passed MA. **However**, he hasn't got a job.
- d. **Although**, I had a headache, I enjoyed the movie.
- e. Ramila didn't get the job, **in spite of**, the fact that she had all the necessary qualifications.
- f. **In spite of**, the fact that he had no money, he bought the car anyway.
- g. We can go to the park for lunch **although**, the weather report says it's going to rain.
- h. **However**, I speak English well, my first language is actually Maithili.

C. Combine the following sentences using the words given in brackets.

- a. He was annoyed. He didn't say anything. (although)
→ Although he was annoyed, he didn't say anything.
- b. Playing the stock market is exciting. It can be risky. (however)
→ Playing the stock market is exciting, however, it can be risky.
- c. He works slowly. He never makes a mistake. (even though)
→ Even though he works slowly, he never makes a mistake.
- d. It was raining. We still went to the park. (in spite of)
→ In spite of rain, we still went to the park.
- e. Hark bought the watch. It was expensive. (despite)
→ Despite being expensive, Hark bought the watch.
- f. He is very poor. He wears expensive clothes. (but)
→ He is very poor but wears expensive clothes.

D. Rewrite the following sentences using (a) although and (b) in spite of.

- a. He had very little time, but he offered to help us.
→ Although he had very little time, he offered to help us.
→ In spite of having very little time, he offered to help us.
- b. She is very poor, but she still wears expensive clothes.
→ Although she is very poor, she still wears expensive clothes.
→ In spite of being very poor, she still wears expensive clothes.
- c. He's a millionaire, but he lives in a very small flat.
→ Although he's a millionaire, he lives in a very small flat.
→ In spite of being a millionaire, he lives in a very small flat.

Follow us on:

d. They have a lot of money, but they are still not happy.

→ Although they have a lot of money, they are still not happy.

→ In spite of having a lot of money, they are still not happy.

e. The traffic was heavy, but we got there in time.

→ Although the traffic was heavy, we got there in time.

→ In spite of the heavy traffic, we got there in time.

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

English

Nepali

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Language Development Unit 11 Arts and Creation (Why Is the Renaissance Important?) Class 11 English Exercise

Broukal Milada

Ways With Words

A. Circle the correct meanings of the underlined words.

a. Martin Luther started a revolt against the conventions of the Roman Catholic Church.

creations

b. It blended classical styles with new ideas.

mixed together

c. The dome marks the beginning of Renaissance architecture.

serves as a sign of

d. The arts flourished during the Renaissance.

grew and improved

e. The new passion for learning also led to amazing discoveries in science.

enthusiasm

C. What do the following idioms mean? Use them in sensible sentences.

a. **a hot potato:** a controversial situation

The racial discrimination issue is a political hot potato.

b. **once in a blue moon:** not very often or rarely

Dad is working in Japan and he visits home once in a blue moon.

c. **a bed of roses:** easy or comfortable situation or activity

It's to be remembered that life is not a bed of roses.

d. **when pigs fly:** used to say that something will never happen

He plans to clean his house every week, but he will probably do it only when pigs fly.

Follow us on:



e. miss the boat: miss an opportunity

If you don't buy now, you may find that you've missed the boat.

f. zip your lip: shut up

She zipped her lip at the meeting yesterday, as it was pointless saying anything.

g. fight tooth and nail: to fight with great ferocity

I want this job so I'm going to fight tooth and nail for it.

h. when life gives you lemon, make lemonade: change something negative into a positive

My grandfather lost his job due to the coronavirus, but he decided to keep busy and active. He says, "When life gives you lemons, make lemonade."

i. goose egg: a score of zero

We had a good game, but the score was goose egg.

D. Match the following phrasal verbs with their meanings.

a. break down: to stop functioning

b. check out: to leave a hotel

c. fed up: tired of something or someone

d. fill out: to complete a form

e. get away: to escape

f. give away: to give something to someone for free

g. give up: to quit a habit

h. look forward to: to wait anxiously for something or an event

i. make up: to invent a story or lie

j. pass away: to die

k. put out: to extinguish

l. take off: to remove clothes or shoes from the body, to depart as in airplane

Comprehension

A. Answer these questions.

a. What does the word Renaissance mean? Which language is it derived from?

Answer: The word Renaissance means 'rebirth'. It is derived from French word 'renaitre'.

b. What did the Greek scholars do in their new locations after leaving the Greek city?

Answer: After leaving the Greek city, Greek scholars taught Greek and shared their precious books in their new locations.

Follow us on:



c. How did 'new learning' teach people to think in different ways?

Answer: 'New Learning' taught people to think in different ways by encouraging them to paint pictures, make statues, buildings and write great literatures.

d. Describe the artistic developments of Renaissance in brief.

Answer: The artistic developments of the Renaissance first happened in Florence; then they spread to other Italian cities. Trade and banking made people living in cities like Florence, Venice and Milan rich. They spent their money and time to enjoy music, art and poetry. Greatest artists such as Leonardo da Vinci, Michelangelo, Raphael, Filippo, Brunelleschi, Shakespeare, and Cervantes produced their master pieces. William Shakespeare became one of the greatest literary figure at that time.

e. Name the three Renaissance scientists who made great discoveries?

Answer: Name of the three Renaissance scientists are Galileo Galilei, Nicolas Copernicus and Sir Isaac Newton.

f. Who developed the printing press? Which country was he from?

Answer: Johannes Gutenberg developed the printing press. He was from Germany.

g. Why is the development of the printing press considered as one of the gifts of Renaissance?

Answer: Before development of the printing press, books were hand written and expensive. The development of the printing press is considered as one of the gifts of Renaissance because it helped writers to publish their books at low price.

h. Name the five famous explorers of the Renaissance?

Answer: The five famous explorers of the Renaissance were Christopher Columbus, Vasco de Gama, John Cabot, Ferdinand Magellan and Sir Francis Drake.

i. Why do some people think of the Renaissance as the beginning of modern history?

Answer: The Renaissance brought revolution in art, architecture, literature, culture, navigation, science etc. That is why people think that the Renaissance is the beginning of modern history.

B. What do you infer from the reading? Tick (✓) the best answer.

a. Before the Renaissance...

education was limited to scholars and privileged

b. Which statement is true?

The Greeks had a strong influence on Renaissance thinking

Follow us on:

c. What did the Renaissance do?

It caused people to make changes in their lives

d. What were the major causes of the Renaissance?

printing, reading and learning

Critical Thinking

a. Do you agree with Machiavelli's view that a good leader can do bad and dishonest things in order to preserve his power and protect his government? Explain.

Answer: Yes I agree with Machiavelli's view that a good leader can do bad and dishonest things in order to preserve his power and protect his government. Machiavelli was a politician and writer. Machiavelli reveals several facts that how a good leader can turn into immoral and evil. He says that in order to maintain power and protect nation or territory, a leader makes a number of mistakes.

It's the duty of a leader to protect his government. So he can go beyond the rules and perform dishonest things to preserve his power. But the leaders whose goal is the pursuit of power, unlimited wealth, or the fame that accompanies success often appear self-centered. This desire is so strong that the leaders violate the moral standards that once governed their conduct. Many leaders reach the top by imposing their will on others, or even destroying those who stand in their way. When they reach the top, they may suspect that others are trying to knock them off their base and hence perform some out of the rules things to protect their leadership.

b. Do you think that art and literature are important assets of a country? Give reasons.

Answer: Art and literature are the foundation of life. It places an emphasis on many topics from human tragedies to tales of the ever-popular search for love. While it is physically written in words, these words come alive in the imagination of the mind, and its ability to comprehend the complexity or simplicity of the text.

Art and literature serves the people, and help them in their struggle for a better life, by arousing the people's emotions against oppression and injustice and increasing their sensitivity regarding the people's sufferings. Our country is facing the tremendous challenge of abolishing poverty, unemployment, inflation, ignorance, casteism, communalism, and other social evils, and hence artists and writers must join the ranks of those who are struggling for a better Nepal, they must inspire the people by their writings, and write against

Follow us on:

oppression and injustice. Thus we can say that art and literature are important assets of a country.

Writing

a. Write an essay on “Literature is the reflection of society.”

Answer:

Literature is the Reflection of Society

Since the dawn of man, the art of storytelling was utilized to pass on critically deemed information about society, life, and everything. During the early days, much of our history was transposed orally through song and spoken word. Literature, like many art forms, is expressionism. It's taking a thought and converting it into a tangible object that can be interpreted by others.

Many authors have been represented social, political, ecological, historical, scientific phenomenon in their works. All our glorious past has secured in the literary pages so that today's generation gain knowledge about the myth of The Ramayana, The Mahabharata, The Old Testament and The Bible, etc. it is only possible by the literary sources that present generation know who were our forefathers and how human came into existence.

Thus, society creates literature because all traditions, customs, religious stories reflect through the literary works, but the excellence and natural surroundings of the reflection hinge on a writer's approach of mind, whether he is enlightened in his outlook or conservative. That's why literature is the mirror of society because it stuffed with all human emotions and activities including good and bad and social and political happenings.

b. It is said that today's reader is tomorrow's leader. Do you agree with this statement? Explain.

Answer: Yes, I agree with the statement that today's reader is tomorrow's leader. Undoubtedly, reading is essential for all-round development of the personality. Reading is an essential basic skills building activity. One's language fluency is determined by the quality of reading. Besides, vocabulary enrichment, ideas collection, familiarization with different types of writing formats, speaking fluency, etc, all depend upon reading.

It is true a person who has the reading habit, never feels lonely and bored. The books open up a magical world for him or her and he lives among angels in the pages of the books. Books never let go the readers astray. They make them wise and pragmatic. We must endeavour to develop this fabulous habit of reading.

Follow us on:

Thus, one thing is absolutely clear, if we want to become great leaders in future, we must be great readers in the present.

c. Write a short biography of a national literary, artistic or historical figure you appreciate most.

Answer:

Bhanubhakta Acharya

The first Nepali poet who also translated the great epic 'Ramayana' from Sanskrit to Nepali, Bhanubhakta Acharya was born on 29 Ashar, 1814 in Tanahu district of Nepal. Acharya was born to a Brahmin family and received excellent education with a strong leaning towards religion from his grandfather at home. He is honored with the title Adikabi for the contributions he has made in the field of poetry and Nepali literature and every year, his birthday is celebrated as a festival of Bhanujayanti (13 July) by conducting various programs, usually academics and poem recitation.

He wrote two masterpieces in his life among which, one is the Bhanubhaktey Ramayan and the other is a letter he wrote in verse form to the Prime Minister while he was in prison. He was made a scapegoat and sent to prison due to some misunderstanding in signing the papers. His letter became one of his great works. He not only won his freedom with his poem but was also given a bag of money. When he died in 1868, he did not know he would one day be one of the most revered poets of Nepal. His creation, however, was not published and he died without receiving credit for his contribution. His works were published by Motiram Bhatta in 1887. Although he is one of the most celebrated and revered poets of Nepal, his works are not as famous as other poets in the history of Nepali literature.

Grammar

B. Complete the following sentences with correct relative pronouns and write whether the clauses are defining or non-defining.

- That's the house where I was born.
- My aunt Nita, who is journalist, is coming to visit next week.
- People who like outdoor activities will love our holidays.
- The early 1960s, when the Beatles first started, was a very exciting time in pop culture.
- My essay on Shakespeare, which I found quite difficult, got a really good mark in the end.
- The Mayans, who lived in Central America, built many stunning temples.

Follow us on:



- g. That's the girl whose brother is in your class.
h. The snake that was in the garden last week belongs to our next-door neighbor.

C. Join the following pairs of sentences with an appropriate relative clauses.

a. He is a musician. His albums have sold millions.
He is a musician whose albums have sold millions.

b. Amelia speaks English and Chinese fluently. She is from Shanghai.
Amelia who is from Shanghai speaks English and Chinese fluently.

c. That's the stadium. Real Madrid plays there.
That's the stadium where Real Madrid plays there.

d. Dublin is my favourite city. It is the capital of Ireland.
Dublin is my favourite city which is the capital of Ireland.

e. The person was really helpful. They spoke to him.
The person to whom they spoke was really helpful.

f. This smartphone takes great photos. I bought it last week.
This smartphone takes great photos which I bought it last week.

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

English

Nepali

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Language Development Unit 12 Fantasy (Down the Rabbit Hole) Class 11 English Exercise

Lewis Carroll

Ways With Words

A. Find the meanings of the following words and phrases from a dictionary and make sentences by using them.

a. **peep into:** to get a quick look into something

He peeped into the box and saw that his wife had gotten him a new watch.

b. **pop down:** to go somewhere quickly

I'll try to pop down tomorrow evening after dinner.

c. **remarkable:** unusual, surprising, excellent or worthy of notice

She has made remarkable progress.

d. **hedge:** a row of bushes or small trees planted close together along the edge of a garden, field or road

Buying a house is the best hedge against inflation.

e. **wonder:** desire to know something

I wonder what the world is doing now.

f. **tumble:** to fall quickly without control

He took a tumble in the hay with the farmers' daughter.

g. **doze off:** to sleep, especially during the day

He was just beginning to doze off when the telephone rang.

h. **earnestly:** seriously

Even when I studied most earnestly it seemed more like play than work.

i. **tiny:** very small

He made a tiny hole in the paper.

j. **creep:** to move slowly, quietly and carefully in order to avoid being heard or noticed

She crept toward the edge of the roof and looked over.

Follow us on:



B. Match the words below with their opposites.

- a. beginning = ending
- b. stupid = clever
- c. natural = artificial
- d. disappointment = happiness
- e. ignorant = educated
- f. anxiously = calmly

Comprehension

A. Answer these questions.

a. What did Alice do while her sister was reading a book?

Answer: Alice felt asleep while her sister was reading a book.

b. Why did Alice run across the field after the Rabbit?

Answer: Alice ran across the field after the Rabbit because of her curiosity to know about the rabbit which she had never seen before.

c. Why didn't she like to drop the jar? What did she do with it?

Answer: She didn't like to drop the jar because she was afraid of killing somebody underneath. She put it onto one of the cupboards.

d. What idea came to her mind when she saw a tiny golden key?

Answer: When she saw a tiny golden key, the idea of opening one of the doors of the hall came to her mind.

e. What was written on the bottle that she found? Did she follow what it said?

Answer: "DRINK ME" was written on the bottle that she found. Yes, she followed what it said.

f. Alice was fond of pretending to be two people. Who were they?

Answer: They were Alice and herself.

g. Why did she want to eat the cake that she found?

Answer: She wanted to eat the cake that she found because it may make her grow bigger.

B. Put these sentences in the right order as they happen in the story.

- f. Alice saw a White Rabbit and ran after him.
- c. Alice fell down a rabbit hole.
- b. Alice found a small key and unblocked a very small door.
- d. Alice drank something from a bottle and got very small door.
- e. Alice tried to climb a table leg to get the key again.
- a. Alice ate a small cake, which said "EAT ME"

Follow us on:

Critical Thinking

a. “Down the rabbit hole” is a sort of writing called fantasy. On the basis of your reading of the story point out some special elements of this kind of writing?

Answer: The word fantasy refers to an illusion or an imaginative idea. The fantastic, a related word, also describes something that is imaginary and unrealistic. As its name suggests, the literary genre of fantasy refers to stories filled with imaginary and unrealistic elements.

Events in a fantasy operate outside the laws of the real universe and typically involve supernatural elements, like magic or magical creatures. Unlike science fiction, which is generally set in the future, fantasy is commonly set in the past. Fantasy stories often contain elements of medieval life, such as castles, knights, kings, magical swords, and references to ancient spells. Characters in fantasy stories often live in a pre-industrial setting with limited technology, other than the advantages of magical power.

The basic elements of fantasy have existed for centuries, and fantasy has roots in ancient myths, legends, and fairy tales. The course toward modern fantasy, however, began in the Victorian era when writers began developing their own distinct fantastical worlds, rather than building on established cultural tradition.

b. Is it good to imagine of things which are not possible to achieve in reality? Explain.

Answer: Imagination is the ability to form mental images of things, ideas or stimulation with no input from the five senses. It's your imagination that allows you to fantasize or dream of something you want that is not in your reality yet.

Most people use their imagination to build pictures of a better lifestyle or what they want to have in life and to predict something positive or negative that may happen. As we practice deliberately using our imagination, it will enhance our creative abilities, which means we will have better thoughts about our life. It helps to develop visions of what is possible, which means it will give a clearer picture of our needs and the life we want to live. It will build up more self-confidence and improve our health and wellness by reducing stress. It helps to cut through mental clutter and noise.

Using imagination makes it possible to experience reality in a world inside our mind. A well-developed imagination will make us a powerful creator and allow us to shape the future that we want. Hence it is good to imagine of things which are not possible to achieve in reality.

Follow us on:

c. Do you talk to yourself when you are in a trouble? If yes, how does it help you?

Answer: Yes I talk to myself when I am in a trouble. I talk to myself everyday! I don't know exactly since how long I have been doing that but all past years that I recall I admit I have done it. And guess what! I love to.

It helps me in many ways. I have so much to tell myself and maybe things that I wouldn't say to anyone. Nobody understands me better than myself. I can just say anything and everything and not be judged! I think self-talk is good as it doesn't require any effort unlike maintaining diaries etc. Self-talk happens mostly when I'm thinking through ideas, when debating decisions, or when I need of a pep talk. I feel better doing self-talk as it gives me feel of presence of someone around me. It helps me to make decisions more easily and motivate me to do things I may be putting off. To sum up, I do self-talk to work through extreme emotions – including anger, sadness, confusion and stress – and to sort out personal conundrums.

Writing

b. Describe a strange dream that you have seen recently.

Answer: I was 10 when this happened. One night, when I had gone to bed, I saw a dream. In a dream, I woke up to hear a noise and looked to my open bedroom door, where I saw a dark figure staring at me with red eyes. Thinking that it was my mother, I had called out to her multiple times, each time getting louder and louder. By the third time I called out to her, her red eyes did not move and I was getting frantic, screaming out to my mom and hiding beneath my covers.

Come to find out my mother was in the living room fast asleep and had woken up from my calls, running into my room. When I looked at her, the black figure had gone and I have not seen it since. But I guess I had always been afraid after that of what might be watching me or threatening to harm me at any given moment. I know that was a demon it was too dark and felt too evil.

Grammar

B. Express your wishes in the following situations in three different ways. Use I wish/If only.....

a. You don't have a mobile phone (You need one).

- I wish I talked to my father about it.
- I wish I could buy one myself.

Follow us on:

- I wish somebody would gift me one.
- b. You don't know the answer of a question from the lesson.**
- I wish my friend told me the answer.
 - I wish my teacher would help me.
 - I wish I could read the lesson properly.
- c. You can't play the guitar.**
- I wish I brought a guitar lesson book.
 - I wish someone would teach me guitar chords.
 - I wish I could go to the guitar expert's.
- d. It's cold.**
- I wish I drank hot water.
 - I wish my mother would burn some firewood.
 - I wish I could stay inside the house.
- e. You are feeling sick.**
- I wish I were healthy.
 - I wish somebody would call a doctor.
 - I wish I could go to hospital.
- f. You live in a crowded city.**
- I wish I lived in the country.
 - I wish the city would be peaceful.
 - I wish I could spend a couple of weeks far from the city.
- g. You feel lonely.**
- I wish I listened to my favourite music.
 - I wish my friend would phone me.
 - I wish I could do the household works.
- C. Rewrite the following sentences making correction if necessary.**
- a. I wish my father bought me a bike.**
I wish my father bought me a bike.
- b. I wish I would write poems.**
I wish I could write poems.
- c. I wish I could remember her name.**
I wish I could remember her name.
- d. I wish I had a god job.**
I wish I had a good job.
- e. I wish I would be rich.**
I wish I were rich.

Follow us on:

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

English

Nepali

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Language Development

Unit 13 Career and Entrepreneurship (Mahabir Pun: A Visionary Social Entrepreneur)

Class 11 English Exercise

Ways With Words

A. Find the words from the text which mean the following. The first letter has been given.

- making you feel physically relaxed; pleasant to wear, sit on, etc. (**comfortable**)
- having a degree from the university (**graduated**)
- without being connected with or influenced by something or by each other (**independently**)
- the introduction of new things, ideas or ways of doing something (**innovation**)
- familiar with something, having read, seen or experienced it (**acquainted**)
- a person who makes money by starting or running businesses, especially when this involves taking financial risks (**entrepreneur**)
- an opportunity or a place for somebody to express their opinions publicly or make progress in a particular area (**platform**)
- to use something, especially for a practical purpose (**utilize**)

B. Write the plural forms of the following nouns.

- calf: calves
 - basis: bases
 - sheaf: sheaves
 - cactus : cacti / cactuses
 - louse: lice
 - crisis: crises
 - person : people / persons
 - formula: formulas
 - ox: oxen
 - fungus: fungi
 - goose: geese
 - oasis: oases
 - analysis: analyses
 - curriculum: curricula
 - appendix: appendixes
 - fungus: fungi
-

Follow us on:

Comprehension

a. How did Mahabir Pun begin his lifelong journey in Nepal after coming back to Nepal from the US?

Answer: Mahabir Pun began his lifelong journey by staying in his home village, Nangi of Myagdi district to help villagers start a high school as a volunteer teacher after coming back to Nepal from the US.

b. Why didn't he want to work for other companies in the US or in Nepal?

Answer: He didn't want to work for other companies in the US or in Nepal to have "so called" better living, work independently and do something on his own for the benefits of human beings.

c. Why did he involve in innovation?

Answer: He involved in innovation to find solution for a problem.

d. What are the income-generating programmes that he helped to start?

Answer: The income-generating programmes that he helped to start are Yak farming, camping ground for the trekkers, cheese making, jam making, paper making, bee keeping, vegetable farming, handicraft making, fish farming etc.

e. Whose support is Pun getting to proceed with his campaign?

Answer: Pun is getting the support of communities to proceed with his campaign.

f. How have the developed countries become prosperous?

Answer: The developed countries have become prosperous because they have given research and innovation topmost priority and they are investing huge amount of money for it.

g. How can we keep the most talented and innovative people in Nepal?

Answer: We can keep the most talented and innovative people in Nepal by creating sound solid atmosphere and support system so that they could work here peacefully.

Critical Thinking

a. Pun says, "We do not have culture of innovation that encourages young people to be innovative and creative". Do you agree with him? Explain.

Answer: An innovation culture is part of the corporate culture and determines how much innovation is supported and promoted by management and employees. The culture of innovation is therefore the framework for every innovation activity. If the culture is not positive, it can hinder innovation, even

Follow us on:



if the idea and the innovation team are still perfect. It is thus a decisive factor in the success of innovation.

Our country Nepal is said to be a developing country but development process is very slow here. Our education system is still based on paper and classrooms, and it hasn't changed much over the years. There is no opportunities for young people who are likely to do something new since we do not have culture of encouraging them. Innovative and creative thinking are not encouraged in our educational system. Every year, thousands of students leave the country in pursuit of a higher education because of this. A research-based education is usually given the highest emphasis in industrialised nations. To do this, they invest a great deal of money and effort. Our culture discourages young people from taking risks, therefore there are no possibilities for them in Nepal.

b. What qualities does an individual need to become an entrepreneur?

Answer: Entrepreneurs are innovative pioneers who venture opportunities and create new market at home and abroad. Becoming an entrepreneur requires more than just a creative idea. All entrepreneurs share commonalities in their attributes, abilities and qualities that empower them to beat the chances and pursue their objectives.

Successful entrepreneurs need to see success. Many of the top businessmen around have seen a product and the associated success that could possibly come with it. If he/she don't plan extensively about their new idea or concept, without thinking ahead, they might encounter unforeseen difficulties with management or cashflow. Perseverance is a key in becoming a full-time entrepreneur. A true entrepreneur will be able to prevent the feeling of being burnt out, if they know what their goals are, and if they love the task of always having to meet deadlines. Discipline is also the key in this field, as an entrepreneur must work hard in order to achieve.

Entrepreneurs also need to manage their time properly. There's no point in spending a whole day over a task, when in reality it will be cheaper and more effective to hire someone to help you with a certain task, thus enabling you to produce more profit. A successful entrepreneur must have an air or a grace about him that will demand respect from other individuals.

Successful entrepreneurs are never secure in their field, although this may be the same with other bog-standard jobs, however the rewards that can be obtained from having the mentioned attributes can be really substantial. By working hard and never giving up, an individual is bound to become a successful entrepreneur.

Grammar

Follow us on:



E. Use the correct tense of the verbs in brackets.

- a. I don't know where Muna is. Have **you seen** (you/see) her?
- b. Janak **wasn't** (not/be) very well last week.
- c. Last night I **lost** (lose) my keys. So I stayed in my friend's home.
- d. I **have lost** (lose) my keys. Can you help me look for them?
- e. I **have known** (know) Jamuna for three years. We still meet once a month.
- f. She **lived** (live) in Sikkim when she was a child.
- g.
A: What's wrong?
B: I **have broken** (break) a glass.
- h.
A: When **did you arrive** (you/arrive)?
B: At 10 pm last night.
- i. How long **have you known** (you/know) Sarmila for?
- j. This is the first time I **have driven** (drive) a car.

F. Use been or gone.

- a. I've never **been** to Japan.
- b. Kalpana has **gone** to Korea. She may come back next year.
- c.
A: Where's Rachana?
B: She has **gone** to the shops.
- d. Harina was here earlier but I think she has **gone** now.
- e. Have you ever **been** to London?

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

English

Nepali

Follow us on:



Puspa Shrestha

Best Quality Resource Site for Class 11 And 12 Students
(Based on Updated Curriculum 2077)

Page | 90

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Language Development Unit 14 Power and Politics (Napoleon Bonaparte) Class 11 English Exercise

Milada Broukal

Ways With Words

A. Choose the correct meaning of the underlined word.

a. Many portraits of Napoleon show him with his right hand placed inside his coat.

sketch

b. Napoleon won one victory after another, defeating the Austrians in eighteen battles.

beating

c. Portrait painters thought this pose made men look more dignified

good-looking

d. They announced France a republic.

officially declared

e. Napoleon conquered Austria in 1805.

triumphed over

f. There was no place to house his soldiers in the bitter Russian winter.

Cold

g. Napoleon was humiliated when he was defeated.

shamed

B. Guess the meanings to these words from the text and make sentences of your own.

1. **violent:** causing hurt

The love that is too violent will not last long.

2. **execute:** kill somebody as a legal punishment

He was captured and executed for murder.

3. **ancient:** very old

The pyramids were built in ancient times.

4. **alliance:** a union between people, groups, countries, etc.

The two parties were still too much apart to form an alliance.

5. **brilliant:** very intelligent or skillful

Brilliant students are favourite of teachers.

6. **genius:** very great and rare natural ability or skill

You don't have to be a genius to see that this plan will never work.

7. **consul:** an official chosen by a government to live in a foreign city

The Consul spoke slowly and with great gravity.

Follow us on:

8. **invading:** to enter a place in order to take control by military force
During the Second World War the island was invaded by the Axis powers.
-

Comprehension

Answer these questions.

a. Where was Napoleon from?

Answer: Napoleon was from France.

b. Why did poor and middle-class people declare France a republic?

Answer: Poor and middle-class people declared France a republic because they were tired of paying heavy taxes for the luxurious life of the king and his nobles.

c. When did Napoleon declare himself emperor of France?

Answer: Napoleon declared himself emperor of France in 1804.

d. What did he do when he ruled France?

Answer: When he ruled France, he restored and reorganized the French government and the Bank of France, built beautiful cities with wide streets, fine bridges, and beautiful buildings and monuments, such as the Arc de Triomphe.

e. Which countries did he rule when he was the emperor?

Answer: He ruled Italy, Switzerland, and Germany when he was the emperor.

f. What was the main cause of his destruction?

Answer: Invasion of Russia was the main cause of his destruction.

g. How did his rule as emperor end in Europe?

Answer: His rule as emperor ended in Europe after the Europeans gathered their armies against him.

h. How could Napoleon have been an even greater ruler?

Answer: Napoleon could have been an even greater ruler if he had not been driven by his love of power.

Critical Thinking

a. What can be the qualities of a great leader? Can a great leader remain in power for long in a country? Discuss.

Answer: Leadership refers to the quality of leading people. Probably, it is one of the most important aspects of life. Above all, Leadership by a good leader has

Follow us on:



led to the progress of human civilization. Without a good leader, no organization or group can succeed. Furthermore, not everyone has this quality. This is because effective Leadership requires certain important characteristics.

First of all, confidence is the most quality. A leader must have strong self-confidence. A person lacking in confidence can never be a good leader. A person must be confident enough to ensure others follow him. A good leader must certainly inspire others. A leader must be a role model for his followers. Furthermore, he must motivate them whenever possible. Also, in difficult situations, a leader must not lose hope. Honesty is another notable quality of a leader. Honesty and Integrity are important to earn the love of followers. Probably, every Leadership which loses trust is bound to fail. People will not work with full effort due to an immoral leader. Another important quality is good communication and decision making. Above all, if a leader makes poor communications and poor decisions then other qualities will not matter. Furthermore, good decision making ensures the success of the entire group. If the leader makes poor decisions, then the efforts of followers won't matter.

In conclusion, a good leader must be an excellent innovator. He must display a creative attitude in his work. Most noteworthy, innovation is a guarantee of survival of a group or innovation. Without creative thinking, progress is not possible.

If a leader is good, capable and have all the above traits then he/she can easily remain in power for long in a country.

b. The 16th president of the USA, Abraham Lincoln said democracy is government of the people for the people and by the people. Do you think it is perfectly applicable in the present context of Nepal? Explain.

Answer: The literal meaning of 'democracy' is 'rule by the people', or, in other words, a political system in which ultimate authority is shared equally by all members of the community. In Nepal as elsewhere such a system is widely endorsed as a desirable state of affairs but there is no precise, shared understanding of what it implies in practice. In Nepal, even more than in most other places, there is also a sense of deep disillusionment with what a system describing itself as democratic has actually achieved.

The political system presented by Abraham Lincoln does not apply to Nepal, as corruption had paralyzed constitutional and government agencies. The Constitution guarantees the idea of collective decision-making that includes all people equally, but it does not actually apply. Democratic norms and values depend on the proper functioning of constitutional and state institutions. But it has been crippled by a group of certain people. The role of bureaucrats is important to keep the administration running smoothly so that development strategies can be easily implemented. However, corrupt bureaucracy does not do its job without bribes and is endorsed by political leaders. Nepalese people

Follow us on:



have never experienced a responsible, accountable government. State institutions are victims of nepotism and discrimination. Thus, in a country like Nepal, institutionalizing democracy is more difficult. To strengthen the principles of democracy, all constitutional agencies, government agencies and citizens must be responsible.

Writing

a. Write an essay on Power and Politics in about 500 words.

Answer:

Power and Politics

Power is usually defined as the ability to influence people's behavior by getting people to do what the person wants. Politically, having the ability to influence people is a huge responsibility. Being a leader means having the abilities to not only convince people, but also to inspire them and influence their decision by making them see the sense that the person with power is acting in their best interest. Therefore, political power is about not only persuasion, but also manipulation. Politics is the act of persuasion, acquisition, and exercise of political power.

Political power shapes and control people's attitude towards the leader and the governing system. The leader guides the behavior of his followers in a direction he desires to achieve the common political objectives. Occupying a political position means having the power and the ability to effect the desired change of behavior of other people involved through persuasion or manipulation. For example, if an individual has the political power over the other person, the degree in which a leader can motivate, incite, inspire, stimulate, and makes other people modify their political behavior. This process is termed as having the political power.

Illegitimate political power implies exercising powers that violate the existing rules; these may include sabotage, protests, and whistle blowing. Extreme illegitimate forms of political power pose a risk of loss of membership. Since most political organization is made up of individuals with different values and interest, this presents the potential for conflict over resources. A leader in power uses his position to attain group goals. However, power is applied in different forms. Coercive power is based on fear. Coercive power includes sanctions, restrictions, and control by force.

Power plays an important role in politics because its consequences can yield positive or negative results. Power in politics is a two-way relationship depending on how people interact based on the resources or values they hold or are in control of. Conflict arises due to pressure to achieve specific goals that

Follow us on:

might not be realistic. That is why leaders manipulate his followers to serve their needs at the expense of others. In a democratic system, use of power should not involve force; instead of obtaining power should be more of influence that is known as soft power.

b. Write a couple of paragraphs about a national hero who fought bravely in the Anglo-Nepal War.

Answer:

Balbhadra Kunwar Chhetri

Balbhadra Kunwar Chhetri (30 January 1789 – 13 March 1823) was a Nepalese military commander and administrator in the Kingdom of Nepal. He is one of the National heroes of Nepal. He was highly praised for his military skill for the defence of the Nalapani fort in the Anglo-Nepalese War (1814–1816). He was Captain in the Nepalese military and was tasked as commander to protect the forts of Dehradun.

As commander of the Gorkhali forces in Dheradun, Capt. Balbhadra Kunwar was handed the responsibility of defending the area. The expanding Nepali/Gorkhali State had since the mid-late 18th century expanded the nation's border on all sides, which eventually led to conflict with the British East India Company and a war followed. Realizing he could not defend the town of Dehradun, Capt. Balbhadra Kunwar withdrew to the strategic hill fort of Khalanga with an army strength of 600 including women and children against the British East India Company British stronghold of 3000–3500 troops. He turned down an incentive proposal of the British who would make him Governor of the Western Garhwal should he surrender or leave Nepal.

Grammar

B. Fill in the blanks with may, must or can't.

- Matthew must be at home. I can see his bike in front of his home.
- They may be coming tomorrow.
- She can't speak French very well. She's only lived in Paris for two weeks.
- My key is not in my pocket or on my desk so it must be in the drawer.
- I saw him yesterday. He can't be abroad.
- You got the job? That's great. You must be very delighted.
- I may finish it by tomorrow if I stay at work all night, but I'm not sure.
- Somebody is knocking on the door. It must be Sabina – she promised to come today.

C. Rewrite the following sentences using may/might, must or can't.

Follow us on:

a. I'm sure he's not going to the cinema today.

He can't be going to the cinema today.

b. Perhaps she knows the answer.

She may know the answer.

c. I'm sure he has a car.

He must have a car.

d. I doubt if it rains later on.

It may rain later on.

e. Perhaps she wants to be alone.

She may want to be alone.

f. I'm sure Harina is in her office.

Harina must be in her office.

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

English

Nepali

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Language Development Unit 15 War and Peace (Shall there be Peace?) Class 11 English Exercise

Hermann Hesse

Ways With Words

A. Match the words on the left side with their meanings on the right.

- a. proclaim – declare
- b. unswerving – steady or constant
- c. magnanimous – generous or forgiving
- d. trample – crush
- e. tremendous – huge
- f. inevitable – unavoidable
- g. dire – dreadful
- h. anguish – distress
- i. impending – upcoming
- j. ruthless – pitiless

B. Fill in the blanks with the suitable word from the list given.

[appalling, sanguine, slaughter, absurdity, futility, reluctance, bestir]

- a. The soldiers suffer **appalling** injuries during the attack.
- b. She is **sanguine** about prospects for the economic development of the country.
- c. Innocent people get unexpected **slaughter** in the war.
- d. The crowd laughed at the **absurdity** of the singer's behaviour.
- e. The intellectuals should be worried about the horror and **futility** of war.
- f. He sensed her **reluctance** to continue the work.
- g. They **bestir** themselves at the first light of morning.

Comprehension

Answer these questions.

a. Why was the Italian Socialist Mergari treated like a madman?

Answer: The Italian Socialist Mergari was treated like a madman because he had spoken a few natural, human words.

b. Can political aims be attained by the criminal instrumentality of war? If yes, how?

Follow us on:



Answer: Yes, political aims can be attained by the criminal instrumentality of wars. This happens as statesmen can inculcate the sense of nationalism in people's mind so deeply that that they are ready to die for the nation.

c. Which hopes and plans were said to be mutually contradictory?

Answer: A new massacre of inconceivable scope was said to be mutually contradictory hopes and plans.

d. What can be the sacred duty of every man of good will on earth?

Answer: The sacred duty of every man of good will on earth is not to sheathe themselves in indifference and let things take their course, but to do their utmost to prevent the final catastrophe.

e. Is it good to tacitly accept war as an instrument of politics? If not, what else should be done?

Answer: It is not good to tacitly accept war as an instrument of politics. we can stop the war if we want to in earnest.

f. How can we stop war in the world?

Answer: We can stop war in the world by not being too lazy, too easygoing, too cowardly as we are. Instead of approving or tolerating the war, we should stop the misguided machines rolling on!

g. What is the main message of this essay?

Answer: The main message of this essay is that peace is inevitable and war can only be stopped with mankind's serious efforts and people should promote peace, friendship and brotherhood in the world instead of hatred and war.

Critical Thinking

a. Are warmongers the greatest enemies for peace? What do you want to suggest to them?

Answer: A warmonger is someone who instigates war, or advocates war over peaceful solutions. Yes, warmongers are the greatest enemies for peace because they are constantly promoting war. They are very agile and uproarious. They generally need to attack or assault another country.

Warmongers are someone who create the war. So, they are regarded as greatest enemies for peace. However, not all conflicts are conceived with nefarious motives. Some of the battles that have occurred throughout history have been fought for the restoration of peace and security, as well as the elimination of violence. As a result, blaming warmongers of being the biggest opponents of peace will be illogical. Those whose only goal is to do damage to the general population and create an imbalance are, without a question, an obstacle to the preservation of peace.

Follow us on:

I want to suggest them that they should be aware of what they are doing. From my perspective, the only thing they should do is to think about humanity and put an end to conflicts that cost the lives of so many innocent people.

b. The Nobel Prize winner American novelist John Steinbeck 1920-1968 once said “all war is a symptom of man’s failure as a thinking animal.” Do you agree with the novelist? Why?

Answer: It is absolutely true all war is a symptom of man’s failure as a thinking animal. War is the worst thing in the world; it gives benefits to none; it causes immense loss of human life and resources to all. Both the winning country as well as the losing country incur heavy casualties and losses.

Wars can never end conflicts, they complicate them further. World War 1 and World War 2 are the two ugliest scars on the face of mankind. They wreaked so much havoc that its precedent is impossible to find since the beginning of evolution. Wars are futile and outcome of man’s ignorance and anger. The people of the world must learn a lesson from these two holocausts.

All the wars that were fought in the history of mankind taught man the horrible lessons of its futility. The most heinous and horrible war in the entire history of mankind is the Second World War. The dates August 6, 1945, and August 9, 1945 are written indelibly on the pages of history with blood of thousands of people who died a painful death in the nuclear bomb attacks in Hiroshima and Nagasaki. The Hiroshima bomb killed approximately 1,40,000 people instantaneously; Nagasaki underwent almost the same nightmare.

Seeing the enormity of death and destruction, the entire world condemned the use of nuclear bombs. Even those who were in favour of its use in war, felt remorseful. The most frightening aspect related to nuclear bombs is, the world is full of them. Bombs many times more potent than the ones used in Hiroshima and Nagasaki, are lying ready in the arsenals of many countries. The world is in a precarious position. When will man become wiser? May be soon!

In conclusion it can be said that wars are symbolic of savage backwardness. Civilized people resolve their conflicts through peaceful dialogue at the discussion table. So, if a war happens, it means human thinking has failed.

c. Does any war end all wars and bring lasting peace to the world? Discuss.

Answer: War is a state of conflict between different societies or countries. The general cause of war is the difference in opinions. Although in some cases, a war to end wars might help attain the peace that peace comes at a price, which is a loss of life and property. The World War 1 and 2 have already caused huge irrecoverable damage.

War is not the only way to bring peace. There are many alternative ways such as negotiating to terms which are reasonable for both the countries and hence

Follow us on:



AR Dinesh



puspas.com.np



Puspa Shrestha

resolving the problem. There shall always be a win-win situation. Some terms shall be accepted by one party and some by the others.

We might be divided by religion, sex, color and the boundaries between our countries but we all belong to the human race. One should treat the other like a brother and help each other out. There will be differences for sure, which should be sorted out in a peaceful manner.

Take a look at our two World Wars. They have proved that wars cause major suffering and in fact, the only reason that World War I ended was that most of the countries involved were exhausted and fed up, and begged their leaders for a ceasefire to be called. Wars would be endless if it was not for humanity's own limits.

In my opinion, war will never be able to bring true, long-lasting peace. Nations will be hit emotionally and economically. So saying that any war end all wars is not the way to create peace. War is neither a solution or option to bring peace.

d. Why do you think countries go to war?

Answer: A war is typically fought by a country or group of countries against an opposing country or group with the aim of achieving an objective through the use of force. There is rarely one single, clear cause of conflict and, ultimately, war. The causes of a war are usually numerous and can often be intertwined in a complicated way. Some of the major causes of war are as follows:

1. Economic Gain

Often wars are caused by one country's wish to take control of another country's wealth. Whatever the other reasons for a war may be, there is almost always an economic motive underlying most conflicts, even if the stated aim of the war is presented to the public as something more noble.

2. Territorial Gain

A country might decide that it needs more land, either for living space, agricultural use, or other purposes. These are conflicts that are fought indirectly between opposing powers in a third country. Each power supports the side which best suits their logistical, military, and economic interests.

3. Religion

Religious conflicts often have very deep roots. They can lie dormant for decades, only to re-emerge in a flash at a later date. Religious wars can often be tied to other reasons for conflict, such as nationalism or revenge for a perceived historical slight in the past.

4. Nationalism

Nationalism in this context essentially means attempting to prove that your country is superior to another by violent subjugation. This often takes the form of an invasion.

Follow us on:

5. Revenge

Seeking to punish, redress a grievance, or simply strike back for a perceived slight can often be a factor in the waging of war. Revenge also relates to nationalism, as the people of a country which has been wronged are motivated to fight back by pride and spirit.

Writing

Write essays in about 500 words on the following topics.

a. War and peace

Answer:

War and Peace

There is a typical saying that war is never ever good, peace is never ever bad. However, if we recall right into the background of the human race, it will be transparent that there have been war since prehistoric times. Although attempts have actually been made to eliminate it, success has not been achieved up until now. Hence, infinite peace seems to be beyond our reach.

Some people neglect that war always brings damage on a mass scale. They forget Mahatma Gandhi's teaching of non-violence, adhering to which he freed his motherland from the shackles of enslavement. They forget that if Gandhi might oust the effective Britishers by dint of non-violence, why not others adhere to the exact same footprint.

War are essential evils as well as their scaries are a lot of and of such magnitude that they can not be explained in words. We have to not neglect the horrors of both world war. In the war, there was mass-killing and destruction of building. Thousands were made orphans and widows. War brings disgust and also spreads out fallacy. People become ruthless as well as egocentric. As result humanity as well as principles experience.

War are not the option to the problems. Instead, they create troubles and produce disgust amongst nations. war can decide one problem yet gives birth to way too many. Hiroshima as well as Nagasaki are the best terrible faces of the effect of war. Also after 60 years, individuals are dealing with the anguishes of war. Whatever be the reason for war, it always causes the damage of life and building at large.

On the whole, the war has always been the greatest blot on mankind. It was developed by the man himself today it is past the control of all human pressures. Now it calls for retrospection for the entire mankind to study it for the sake of mankind, or else, absolutely nothing will remain neither war nor humanity.

Follow us on:



b. Responsive youths for peace and prosperity

Answer:

Responsive Youths for Peace and Prosperity

Youth plays vital role in everything, everywhere. Diversity exists everywhere in this world and it should be accepted to create a balanced and peaceful society. Thus, for each and every country, youth is very important factor in creating a harmony. Youth contributes innovative ideas and they are fresh and young blood who can accomplish entire plan with their passion and hard work.

Youth must play an active role in creating and promoting peace, tolerance, co-existence, and non-extremist environment. They must address all types of conflicts and issues in a constructive way that encourages reconciliation and conflict resolution. The youth can be the agent of a change by changing their attitude and perspective towards the world. At the national level, the youth can be the community leaders of their respective communities and can initiate various projects to educate the people of rural areas. They can join various non-government organisations working for peace, tolerance, and harmony. In this way, youth ambassadors of all the communities may form link with one another and this will enhance the acceptability and adaptability level among them.

Youth need to educate the western world about Islam and Muslim world about western world. In this way, rigidity, extremism, fanaticism, sectarianism and all such factors, differences and misconceptions hampering the way of peace will be removed. At the national level, youth must understand their socio-economic problems and they must know how to tackle them peacefully. Likewise, on the international level, our youth must be trained to cope with evils like racism, terrorism, prejudice and ethnocentrism. In this way, youth can be responsible for balanced, prosperous and peaceful society.

Grammar

B. Divide the following sentences into different parts.

- a. The children are playing now.
subject + verb + adverbial (adjunct)
- b. Srijana will be reading a story.
subject + verb + object
- c. Bimala is a very beautiful girl.
subject + verb (be) + complement
- d. She usually wears glasses.
subject + adverbial + verb + object
- e. They elected him President.

Follow us on:

subject + verb + object + complement

f. Rabin is laughing.

subject + verb (be)

g. He has a big house in Butwal.

subject + complement + adverbial

h. The man who lives next door is a professor.

subject + complement

i. Her uncle has been living in Kathmandu for fifteen years.

subject + verb + adverbial + adverbial

j. The girl with long hair asked me a question last week.

subject + verb + object (indirect) + object(direct) + adverbial

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

[English](#)

[Nepali](#)

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Language Development Unit 16 Critical Thinking (What Is the Soul?) Class 11 English Exercise

Bertrand Russell

Ways With Words

A. The words in the crossword puzzle are from the text. Find them from the text to solve the puzzle based on the meaning clues given below.

1. unquestionable, impossible to doubt
indubitable
2. never done or known before
unprecedented
3. emergence or origination
emanation
4. obviously or clearly
evidently
5. impossible to achieve or overcome
insuperable
6. moved with a violent, irregular action
agitated
7. appropriate or suitable
apt
8. force back
repel
9. conservative
orthodox
10. up to now
hitherto

B. Find the words from the text that mean the following.

- a. misleading or illusionary (**deceptive**)
- b. in a natural state; not yet processed or refined (**crude**)
- c. a mystical horse like animal with a single straight horn projecting from its forehead (**unicorn**)
- d. never dying or decaying (**immortal**)
- e. come to an end; stop (**cease**)
- f. to activate or put into motion (**actuate**)

Comprehension

Follow us on:



Answer these questions.

a. What's the difference between the body and the soul?

Answer: The body exists in time and space whereas the soul exists in time only. In simple words, body is visible entity whereas soul is not visible.

b. What do you understand by the psychologists' saying that there is no such thing as mind?

Answer: Psychologists believe that there is no existence of mind as they study mental processes and human behaviors by observing, interpreting, and recording how people relate to one another and the environment.

c. How can a mental activity be reduced to a physical activity?

Answer: Mental activity can be reduced to a physical activity by saying mind is just an emotion of body which is really an elaborate scientific construction.

d. How are mind and body related?

Answer: Mind and body are related as they are merely convenient ways of collecting and organizing events inside a man's head into two groups according to causal relations.

e. What is the relation between mind and memory? Does memory survive a person's death?

Answer: Memory is the most essential characteristic of mind. No, memory doesn't survive a person's death because it is connected with certain kind of brain structure which decays at death. Thus, memory also dies.

f. How is our power on the earth's surface entirely dependent upon the sun?

Answer: Our power on the earth's surface is entirely dependent upon the sun as it warms our seas, regulates our weather patterns, and gives energy to the growing green plants that provide the food and oxygen for life on Earth.

Critical Thinking

a. Do you believe that soul really exists? Write your arguments in support of your answer.

Answer: I believe that souls do exist.

Have you ever imagined about your own death? Have you ever thought that what happens after the incident that the world calls death? Could you ever convince yourself that your existence on this planet earth would be finished once you die?

I couldn't ever convince myself with the fact that I'll be finished once I die. Death would cause the degradation of my physical body but it's just

Follow us on:



AR Dinesh



puspas.com.np



Puspa Shrestha

unimaginable that I will too get over once the death occurs. This “I” is nothing but the soul.

I know that the science that we’re familiar with hasn’t proved the existence of souls yet. But we shouldn’t be hopeless. The boundary of science is expanding day by day. Even the fans and lights that we use everyday were once unimaginable but we know that today they exist. There are new fields added to science everyday. Some of the fields that have tried to progress in this topic are metaphysics, para psychology etc.

As far as the ancient science is concerned, it had proved the existence of soul long ago. It also developed methods by which one can experience one’s soul. But anyways, I hope that there would be a day when the modern science will too prove the existence of soul.

b. If you want to change your body, you first have to change your mind. Discuss.

Answer: I support the statement that “If you want to change your body, you first have to change your mind.” Psychologists say our “self talk” or “internal dialogue” can make or break a fitness routine.

The problem is that many people simply aren’t aware of how destructive their thoughts are. The thing that precedes our behavior is a thought, and we sometimes aren’t good at getting in touch with our thoughts. Let me take my fitness example. The first step in charting the right course to fitness is to recognize how my thoughts are undermining my exercise plans. The second step is to challenge the negative thinking – and there’s certainly no shortage of that when it comes to exercise.

It can be tough for beginners to master the skills necessary to adhere to an exercise plan, but give it time. If I could stick it out for six months, it starts to become a part of who I am versus what I do. Plus, I’ll probably see some positive results that can motivate me to keep at it. Among them: better muscle tone, feeling stronger and more fit, weight loss, improved mood and better sleep.

Writing

Write critically on the given topics.

a. The existence of God

Answer: The existence of God is foundational to the study of theology. The Bible does not seek to prove God’s existence, but rather takes it for granted. Scripture expresses a strong doctrine of natural revelation: the existence and attributes of God are evident from the creation itself, even though sinful

Follow us on:

human beings suppress and distort their natural knowledge of God. The dominant question in the Old and New Testaments is not whether God is, but rather who God is. Philosophers both Christian and non-Christian have offered a wide range of arguments for God's existence, and the discipline of natural theology (what can be known or proven about God from nature alone) is flourishing today.

Some philosophers, however, have proposed that belief in God is rationally justified even without theistic arguments or evidences. Meanwhile, professing atheists have offered arguments against God's existence; the most popular is the argument from evil, which contends that the existence and extent of evil in the world gives us good reason not to believe in God. In response, Christian thinkers have developed various theodicies, which seek to explain why God is morally justified in permitting the evils we observe.

If theology is the study of God and his works, then the existence of God is as foundational to theology as the existence of rocks is to geology. Two basic questions have been raised regarding belief in God's existence: (1) Is it true? (2) Is it rationally justified (and if so, on what grounds)? The second is distinct from the first because a belief can be true without being rationally justified (e.g., someone might irrationally believe that he'll die on a Thursday, a belief that turns out by chance to be true). Philosophers have grappled with both questions for millennia. In this essay, we will consider what the Bible says in answer to these questions, before sampling the answers of some influential Christian thinkers.

Grammar

A. Rewrite the following sentences using 'used to'. You can make an affirmative/ negative statement or a question.

a. I/live in a flat when I was a child.

I used to live in a flat when I was a child.

b. She/love eating chocolate but now she hates it.

She used to love eating chocolate but now she hates it.

c. He/go to fishing in the summer?

Did he use to go fishing in the summer?

d. My sister/play tennis when she was at school.

My sister used to play tennis when she was at school.

e. He/play football every weekend?

Did he use to play football every weekend?

f. My grandfather/speak five languages.

My grandfather used to speak five languages.

g. I/not hate school from the beginning.

Follow us on:



AR Dinesh



puspas.com.np



Puspa Shrestha

I did not use to hate school from the beginning.

h. You/live in Kathmandu?

Did you use to live in Kathmandu?

i. He/play Dandibiyo when he was a small child.

He used to play Dandibiyo when he was a small child.

j. She/wear a frock when she was small but nowadays she wears jeans.

She used to wear a frock when she was small but nowadays she wears jeans.

B. Write a short paragraph describing your past habits.

Answer: For five years, I lived with my uncle. I used to begin my regular tasks in the mornings at my uncle's home. Despite having a full-time job at home, I used to strive for first place in my class. My instructors utilised locally accessible materials to make their lessons successful, despite the fact that my school lacked enough resources. They'd cheer us up in class by being nice. Project work was assigned by our English instructor. It proved to be very beneficial to our academic endeavours.

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

[English](#)

[Nepali](#)

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Language Development Unit 17 Globalisation and Diaspora (What Lost Identity? The Diaspora and Globalisation) Class 11 English Exercise

Abdalahadi Alijla

Ways With Words

A. Choose the words for the following meanings.

a. the severely damaging or destructive effects of something
ravage

b. someone forced to leave their country in order to escape war, persecution,
or natural disaster
refugee

c. to face a difficult situation
confront

d. take a position of power or importance illegally or by force
usurp

e. the process of becoming a part of a group, country, society, etc.
assimilation

f. an area within a larger territory whose inhabitants are culturally or ethnically
distinct
enclave

C. Fill in the gaps with the correct word from the brackets.

a. I asked him if he was attending the ceremony and he shook his head 'no'.
(shook/moved/nodded)

b. They made a horrible decision which caused irreparable damage to our
company. (hopeless/inflexible/irreparable)

c. The leaders need to break down barriers so as to create favorable
environment in the nation. (barriers/obstacles/hindrances)

d. You ought to talk to the manager to settle the dispute. (solve/settle/clear
up)

e. Perhaps this issue will not get much
media coverage (security/examination/coverage)

f. This week is the first week of Joan as an in-charge. Everything is

Follow us on:



AR Dinesh



puspas.com.np



Puspa Shrestha

running **smoothly** (smoothly/calmly/easily)

g. I haven't read the text thoroughly, but given a **quick** glance.
(fast/quick/rapid)

Comprehension

Answer the following questions.

a. Why did millions of Palestinians leave their country?

Answer: Millions of Palestinians left their country because their country had denied basic human rights to find a better life and better economic opportunities.

b. How is the global culture formed? Is cultural identity possible even in the global culture? Justify.

Answer: The global culture is formed by the youthful generations who have grown up in the midst of massive technological advancements.

Yes, cultural identity is possible even in the global culture. Social media, street journalism, and global transnational businesses all play a role in catalysing new global culture formation processes. Globalization fosters cultural identity by creating a feeling of belonging. People are becoming increasingly worried about the uniqueness and particularity of their own culture in the current age of globalisation. Thus, even in a global society, cultural identity is conceivable.

c. Why can moving from one side of the world to the other be an economic challenge for newcomers?

Answer: Moving from one side of the world to the other can be an economic challenge for newcomers because integration process needs time; starting from learning the language, integrating culturally, integration into the labour market.

d. How can immigrants foster economy at different magnitudes of scale in their new homes?

Answer: Immigrants can foster economy at different magnitudes of scale in their new homes by starting their own companies or businesses.

e. Can immigrants fully integrate in the new societies? Give reasons.

Answer: No, immigrants can't fully integrate in the new societies because the society does not open its doors fully to allow them to integrate.

f. Mention any two benefits of integrating into a new society for the immigrants.

Answer:

– Migrants will have equal learning, engagement, and self-esteem

Follow us on:

possibilities.

– The receiving nations can improve their economic prospects by integrating immigrants.

g. Why should the immigrants run in concordance with global culture?

Answer: The immigrants should run in concordance with global culture because the cost of isolation and non-convergence is higher and more damaging than integration.

Critical Thinking

a. Do you think that the local is globalized and the global is localized? Can there be the global culture as well? Give examples.

Answer: Globalization is the process of increasing local businesses around the world whereas Localization is the adaptation of a resource or product to fit the demands of one specific culture or locale. I think local is globalized because local products, media, culture are now accessible all over the world. Similarly, the global is also localized because local people can benefit from the global product and the local culture. There can be a global culture among local peoples that is a by-product of globalization. People can feel world culture in different fields like education, sports, music, food, fashion, language, etc. Thus I think that local is globalized and the global is localized.

Yes, there can be the global culture as well. Some examples are listed below:

1. Creating a more homogenous world.
2. Attempt to promote a Western lifestyle and possibly Americanize the world.
3. Trend that will eventually make all of human experience and customs the same since all cultures are coming together into one.

b. What is globalization? Discuss the effects of globalization on traditional cultures.

Answer: Globalization can be defined as the increased interconnectedness and interdependence of peoples and countries. It is generally understood to include two inter-related elements: the opening of international borders to increasingly fast flows of goods, services, finance, people and ideas; and the changes in institutions and policies at national and international levels that facilitate or promote such flows.

A nation's culture changes with economic development. One key fact is that people leave villages and agriculture for cities. This itself changes culture – agricultural festivals decline. In Nepal, there used to be bullock cart – but then tractors came in. People used to write letters – and then the phone came. When texting rose with smartphones, voice calls declined, and new cultural etiquette came up. When electricity came in, evening life changed. When air-conditioning came in, people stopped sitting on their stoops. When families

Follow us on:

had one TV, the family (and neighbors) sat around it. Now, everyone has their own screen.

So, the answer is that technology, economic development and foreign cultures do change local behavior – but core elements of the culture may remain. So, we cannot say that globalization changes everything. But, some changes are inevitable.

c. Discuss the impacts of globalization on the process and progress of education in Nepal.

Answer: Globalization of Education is the integration and application of similar education systems and knowledge throughout the world across the borders, improving the quality & deployment of education worldwide. The impacts of globalization on the process and progress of education in Nepal are as follows:

1. Globalization has improved the quality of education in Nepal. Due to globalization, Nepal got the opportunity to witness the best education systems worldwide and thus could replicate it.
2. New methods of learning such as e-learning, blended learning was quickly adopted by due to globalization.
3. Due to globalization, foreign universities were established in Nepal. These universities helped many students in getting a high-quality education. Moreover, foreign investments in the education sector also helped in improving the facilities and infrastructure.
4. Education should develop empathy and understanding in students. Globalization has enabled students to develop an understanding of other cultures, which is like a practical education.
5. Globalization made many people aware of human rights and the loopholes in the governance.

Thus, Globalization has helped Nepal in improving its education systems and literacy rate. However, not everyone could benefit from the impact of globalization on education. Education inequalities must be bridged between Rich-poor & urban-rural areas so that everyone can utilize the opportunities created by globalization.

Writing

Write a news story to be published in a newspaper about a local festival/fair you have witnessed.

Answer:

Dashain – Then and Now

KATHMANDU, OCTOBER 26

Follow us on:



AR Dinesh



puspas.com.np



Puspa Shrestha

Time brings change, and while that is mostly good and perhaps the only way forward, we wish something would remain the same.

Dashain seems to evoke that sentiment.

There was a time when Dashain was a highly anticipated festival, and while the fun is still there, the vibe isn't the same. The memories of Dashain were more heart warming than how we celebrate the festival today.

Dashain holidays were all about meeting cousins, playing games and eating a lot of meat. While we still do that, the charm and excitement have largely been lost because it's not a new thing for today's generation.

Today it's more of responsibility than fun.

Before, eating rice and meat was a very big thing for the poor and used to happen only during the time of Dashain.

We used to fly kites and try to cut the threads of those from our neighbourhood. We would run after the kites as they gently fell on the ground. The first signs of Dashain were the kites appearing in the sky. Kite flying and also playing on the swings were the most important and fun activities of this festival.

While we were kids, we used to sit in the lap of the elders on a large swing as we were scared. But now we can clearly see the change. It is no longer a big deal to have food on the table and we rarely see kites flying in the sky or the swings swaying in the fields.

We used to get new clothes once in a year during the time of Dashain, but now we buy clothes every month. There is now no difference between the normal days and Dashain. Before Dashain created memories, but now it's more like capturing the moments. Dashain is more for the photos. It's not a bad thing, but only giving priority to photos to show off and not enjoy the moment is not good.

Before, so much value was given to blessings bestowed to us by our elders, but today children are only interested in the money that is given as gifts. It's not that today's generation has completely forgotten the importance of Dashain. But slowly, but surely the charm of the biggest Hindu festival is waning. The vibes and that feel are going down.

Lastly, change comes with time, and we should move accordingly, but we should never forget our identity, our traditions and festivals, which create great memories.

Grammar

Follow us on:



B. Complete each sentence using what/how/where/whether + one of these verbs:

- Do you know how to get to Rama's house?
- I don't know whether to apply for the job or not.
- Have you decided where to go for your picnic?
- Can you show me how to use this camera?
- Ask Hari. He'll tell you how to ride a bicycle.
- I was really astonished. I didn't know how to ride on the horse.

C. Paraphrase the following sentences using the verb in brackets as in the example.

a. Mahesh forgets to close the windows. (tend)
Mahesh tends to forget closing the windows

b. Your car has broken down. (appear)
Your car appears to have broken down.

c. Ashika is worried about her exam. (seem)
Ashika seems to be worried about her exam.

d. They have developed the theory. (claim)
They claim to have developed the theory.

e. He's enjoying his new job. (pretend)
He pretends to be enjoying his new job.

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

English

Nepali

Follow us on:



Puspa Shrestha

Best Quality Resource Site for Class 11 And 12 Students
(Based on Updated Curriculum 2077)

Page | 115

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



AR Dinesh



puspas.com.np



Puspa Shrestha

Language Development Unit 18 Immigration and Identity (Identity Crisis in Immigrants) Class 11 English Exercise

*Jonathan Yardley
The Washington Post*

Ways With Words

A. Words from the text to solve the crossword puzzle:

Across

2. as is certain to happen – **inevitably**
4. famous and respected – **eminent**
6. a temporary stay – **sojourn**
7. knowing everything – **omniscient**

Down

1. the state of being preoccupied – **preoccupation**
3. anxious or fearful that something bad will happen – **apprehensive**
5. a person of mixed white and black ancestry – **mulatto**

B. Find the meanings of the following words in a dictionary as they are used in the text.

a. melancholy

a deep feeling of sadness that lasts for a long time and often cannot be explained

b. elusive

difficult to find, define or achieve

c. motif

a subject, an idea that is developed in a work of literature

d. disdain

the feeling that somebody is not good enough to deserve your respect or attention

e. fabricate

to produce something false to deceive someone

Follow us on:

f. intoxicate

to cause somebody to lose control of their behaviour or their physical and mental abilities

g. resentment

a feeling of anger or unhappiness about something that you think is unfair
Homophones

D. Choose the right word to fill in the blanks.

- a. Can you **bury** the box in the back garden? (*bury/berry*)
- b. Alex could not **break** the branch off the tree. (*break/brake*)
- c. **Whose** pencil is on the floor? (*Who's/Whose*)
- d. We have got very **few** (*phew/few*) tasks left.
- e. Some tribes worship their gods before they **prey**. (*prey/pray*)
- f. **Damn** it. Everything is messed up. (*Dam /Damn*)
- g. What a wonderful **lesson** the professor presented. (*lesson/lessen*)

Comprehension

Answer these questions.

a. How is Willie Chandran different from the rest of his family?

Answer: Willie Chandran is different from the rest of his family as he is insecure about himself and his own identity.

b. Who is the main character of Half A Life? How is he described?

Answer: Willie Chandran is the main character of Half A Life. He was born in India to a Brahmin father and a poor mother 40-some years ago. His middle name comes from the name of an English writer called Somerset Maugham.

c. Why does Willie leave India?

Answer: Willie leaves India because he had no identity in India being born as a child of a high caste father and a low caste mother. He is hateful to his father and manages to get a scholarship to a college in London.

d. What is the revelation that Willie begin to feel in college and in London?

Answer: Willie begins to feel that he is secure and free unlike in India where racial discrimination plays a vital role. There he could remake himself, his past and his ancestry.

e. Why does Willie accompany Ana?

Answer: Willie accompanies Ana because she has a kind of high status in her colonial world and he can also find complete acceptance there.

Follow us on:



f. What is the central issue Naipal has raised in the novel?

Answer: In the novel, Naipaul has raised an issue of identity crisis regarding ethnicity and culture.

Critical Thinking

a. What kind of divided identity is depicted in the novel 'Half a Life'? How do characters in the novel try to create new identities for themselves? Explain.

Answer: According to the review of the novel 'Half A Life', there are three characters having mixed racial or divided identities. They are Willie, Ana and a big light eyed man. Willie, the central character of the novel has a divided identity because of his birth from a Brahmin father and a low caste mother. Because of racial discrimination that prevails in India, Willie feels unsecure and loss of identity. He is unhappy in India and to find his freedom and identity he migrates to London. Ana is another character having the same kind of divided identity. She belongs to a mixed African identity (part Portuguese and part African) similar to the identity of Willie. Willie and Ana like each other. Ana has also come to London in search of her identity but later after meeting Willie, she feels that she may have a high status in her Portuguese African country even to be a second rank Portuguese than mimicking other's behavior to hide her past. Willie also follows her to her home country in a hope of complete acceptance there. But he also feels there lack of identity. He sees the plight of an illegitimate man illegally born out of an African mother and a Portuguese landowner father. Such people are abused by Portuguese people because of the same of their birth.

b. Discuss the similarities between the author and the protagonist in the novel?

Answer: Surprisingly, there is a startling amount of parallelism between Willie Chandran and the Nobel Prize-winning author V.S. Naipaul. Naipul is of Indian descent and was born in the country of Trinidad in 1932. He left his home country at the age of 18 to pursue higher education and went to England on a scholarship grant in the year 1950. Naipaul studied at University College of Oxford and after four years he realized he wanted to be an author. He took up the pen and paper and found himself, realizing that his occupation would forever be as a writer. His prowess as a writer is incredible. In addition to Half a Life, Naipaul has written A House for Mr Biswas, A Bend in the River, Between Father and Son, A Way in the World, Beyond Belief, and many more, totalling more than 20 fiction and non-fiction books in his lifetime. As mentioned before, he is a Nobel Laureate and now lives his life in Wiltshire, England. The similarities of all these characteristics with Willie Chandran is so astounding that some would have guessed Naipaul was writing an autobiography. Willie is also of Indian descent and left his home country at the age of 18 to go study

Follow us on:



abroad; both of them were able to do this because of a scholarship. Willie went to England to study at a university for four years as well. He took up writing and published a book while he was studying in London and briefly pursued writing, which is Naipaul's occupation. They both eventually find themselves living in a foreign country other than the one they were born in. It is clear that V.S. Naipaul used aspects of his own life to craft and mold a protagonist and a story that would be powerful and compelling enough to keep readers glued to the page.

Writing

B. Write a review of a book/film you have recently read or watched.

Answer:

The Time Machine

- 1. Title of the Book:** The Time Machine
- 2. Author of the Book:** H.G. Wells
- 3. Country:** United Kingdom
- 4. Language:** English
- 5. First originally published by:** William Heinemann, London in 1895.
- 6. Genre:** Science Fiction Novel
- 7. Cost of the Book:** Rs. 300
- 8. Name of the Publisher:** Dover Publications
- 9. Edition and year of Copyright:** April 3, 1995
- 10. No. of pages:** 80
- 11. Writing style:** Narrative
- 12. Characters:** The Narrator-Hillyer, Eloi, Morlocks, Weena
- 13. Plot:** The story follows a Victorian scientist, who claims that he has invented a device that enables him to travel through time, and has visited the future, arriving in the year 802,701 in what had once been London. The narrator recounts the Traveler's lecture to his weekly dinner guests that time is simply the fourth dimension and demonstrates a tabletop model machine for travelling through the fourth dimension. He reveals that he has built a machine capable of carrying a person through time and returns at dinner the following week to recount a remarkable tale, becoming the new narrator.
- 14. Summary:** A group of men, including the narrator, is listening to the Time Traveler discussing his theory that time is the fourth dimension. The Time Traveler produces a miniature time machine and makes it disappear into thin air. The next week, the guests return, to find their host stumble in, looking disheveled and tired. They sit down after dinner, and the Time Traveler begins his story.

Follow us on:



15. My Impressions: The time traveler's machine is described in such sketchy terms that it can scarcely be believed as an instrument of science, and the time traveler's account is similarly sketchy and bizarre. The very nature of time travel means that he's away for only a short period of time, and the only "proof" of his travels is a crunched up flower. And given that the narrative is told in a twice-removed manner, the reader can't help but wonder whether any of the novels is true at all. Did the time traveler truly engage in such chronological shenanigans, and did he experience what he claims? Or is he simply using an imagined future to provide a warning about the current state of society? But the reality is that neither the truth nor the journey matters: it's only the outcome.

Grammar

Change the following into indirect speech.

- a. She said, "While I was having dinner, the phone rang."
➤ She said that while she was having dinner, the phone rang.
- b. My friend said, "Where are they staying?"
➤ My friend asked where they were staying.
- c. Jamila said, "I travel a lot in my job."
➤ Jamila said that she travelled a lot in her job.
- d. She said to me, "We lived in China for five years."
➤ She told me that they had lived in China for five years.
- e. He said to me, "Do you like ice-cream?"
➤ He told me if I had liked ice-cream.
- f. They said, "Hurray! We've won the match."
➤ They exclaimed with delight that they had won the match.
- g. He said, "I'd tried everything without success, but this new medicine is great."
➤ He said that he'd tried everything without success, but this new medicine was great.
- h. Sony said, "I go to the gym next to your house."
➤ Sony said that she went to the gym next to my house.
- i. He said, "Be quiet after 10 o'clock."
➤ He told me to be quiet after 10 o'clock.

Follow us on:

j. He said, “I don’t want to go to the party unless he invites me.”

➤ He said that he didn’t want to go to the party unless he invited him.

k. He said to me, “I will see you tomorrow if you meet me.”

➤ He told me that he would see me the following day if I met him.

l. She said, “If I were you, I would give up the work.”

➤ She said that if she were me, she would give up the work.

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

English

Nepali

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Language Development Unit 19 Travel and Tourism (Discovering West Nepal – The Wild Frontier) Class 11 English Exercise

Megan Leung

Ways With Words

A. Find the words from the text which mean the following.

- became fuller and softer by shaking – **fluffed**
- sound mental health – **sanity**
- consisting of or easily breaking into small pieces – **crumbly**
- neither very hot nor very cold – **temperate**
- land that does not have enough water to support the growth of plants – **arid region**
- only slightly warm – **lukewarm**

B. Find the meanings of the following words in an English dictionary, write their word classes and use them in your own sentences.

a. **hazy (adjective)**: not clear, especially because of heat
The mountains were hazy in the distance.

b. **frontier (noun)**: a line that separates two countries, etc.; the land near this line
Many people travelling across the frontier were illegal immigrants.

c. **lush (adjective)**: covered in healthy grass and plants
He glanced at the lush green hills.

d. **flipflops (noun)**: open shoes
She took off her flipflops before crossing the stream.

e. **altitude (noun)**: height above sea level
My friends are flying at an altitude of 10000 m.

f. **fatal (adjective)**: causing death
If her sister gets ill again it could prove to be fatal.

g. **magnificent (adjective)**: extremely attractive and impressive
Pashupati temple looks magnificent in the evening.

Follow us on:

C. make a list of the Nepali words used in the text and write their English equivalents.

bideshi: foreign

Tatopani: lukewarm water

raksi: wine

bahini : younger sister

mathi: up

tala: down

sutne: sleep

panipuri: water balls / water bowels

pani: water

Comprehension

Answer these questions.

a. How did the author feel when she saw a colourful rooster in the western Himalayas?

Answer: The author felt amused when she saw a colourful rooster in the western Himalayas. Furthermore, she felt the rooster glancing at her for a brief moment and winked at her.

b. How does she describe the houses on the trails of western Nepal?

Answer: She describes the house on the trails of western Nepal as made by the stones under a rock over a river. They looked too crumble to live in but people were comfortable with them.

c. What does she mean when she says “I walked towards a village 15 kilometres further as the crow flies?”

Answer: When she says “I walked towards a village 15 kilometres further as the crow flies” she means the distance she had to cover was measured between two places.

d. Describe the village Thankur in brief.

Answer: The village Thankur have had only two houses. The village is located in an arid region. There is not much human mobility. Shiny and rainbow colored large birds called Himalayan monal are found there.

e. What happened when she reached Jumla and how was she relieved?

Answer: When she reached Jumla she was ill with an unknown virus and a bad tummy. She was relieved after having medicine and pani puri.

Follow us on:



f. How does the author describe the bucket water in Khali Lagna?

Answer: The water surface on the bucket was frozen. When she cracked it, she felt satisfied as the water underneath was surprisingly lukewarm.

g. How was Rara Lake on the day she reached there?

Answer: The water in Rara Lake was glistening in its dark blue glory when she reached there.

Critical Thinking

a. It is said that travelling a place equals to reading three books. Do you agree? Why?

Answer: I totally agree with the saying that travelling a place equals to reading three books. The world is a great book, of which they who never stir from home read only a page. It is a well established fact now that travelling gives a character to our knowledge. While travelling we have firsthand knowledge about the place we are travelling to. We actually see the place with our own eyes, and its memory stays with us throughout our life. For example, reading about a place may be entertaining and appealing, but visiting it in person will surely be thousand times more entertaining and gratifying.

Traveling is wonderful in many ways. As we travel we meet more new people, cultures, and lifestyles. With all the newness in our life, we are also opened to new insights, outlooks, and perceptions of the world and living, which often gives us a new purpose for our lives. While travelling, we have to be prepared for unplanned emergencies and schedules. We have to make arrangements for our travelling, lodging and boarding. This makes us more organized and self-reliant. Thus, travelling makes the inhabitants interconnected. We start feeling ourselves as members of one big family of mankind living on one home planet. This makes life more wonderful.

In conclusion it can be said that travelling is one of the most precious gifts of life, and we must relish it and enjoy its sundry life-transforming benefits.

b. The author spent five-week long walk along the western Himalayas. Do you think it was adventurous? Why?

Answer: Yes, it was adventurous because she had covered a distance that totals up to 25 percent of the Nepal Himalaya via the lower Great Himalayan Trail, along with some funky detours. She experienced places where few tourists go. She chose the Dhaulagiri Circuit. She witnessed and experienced as medieval and raw. She learnt to survive the wild western region with primal instincts, human intuition, and oneness with nature. She was able to break the monotony of life and work. Life is a mad rush but she became to able to escape

Follow us on:

it to participate in adventure from one place to another, from one activity to another, trying to gather as much as possible. Trekking through glaciers, crossing rivers, walking through arid regions, spending cold nights at high altitude, walking in the snow being frozen is a challenging task. That's why this journey is really an adventurous one.

Writing

A. Write a travelogue of your recent visit to a natural/religious place in about 300 words.

Answer: With the objective to learn through observation rather than rote learning, we the students of grade-11 visited the Pashupati area enlisted in the world heritage site. Pashupati area is located on the bank of the holy river Bagmati in the eastern part of the Kathmandu district. There are places like Gaushala, Pingalasthan, Jay Bageshwori, Guheshwori, Deupatan, Gaurighat, etc including the holy Pashupatinath temple in this area. There are about 500 different temples, shrines and 1000 shivalingas in this area. The main temple of Pashupatinath has been constructed in Pagoda style.

The panchamukhi jyotirlinga kept inside Pashupati temple was established by the person called Nep during the Gopal dynasty. After the king, Prachanda Dev, Dharma Dutta, Queen of Shiva Singh; Ganga Devi and Prapta Malla constructed and reconstructed the temple. Evidence is found that even the Shah kings and Rana prime ministers also contributed to its reconstructions.

A large fair is held on the occasion of Shivaratri, Teej, Bala Chaturdashi, Janai Purnima as well as every Monday of Shrawan. It is found that thousands of pilgrims visit this temple during these occasions from inside and outside the country. The number of pilgrims is not less on other days as well. They visit the Pashupatinath temple as it is considered the holiest temple of Hindus.

The housings, huts, factories and industries constructed encroaching the land of Pashupati trust should be removed from their while afforestation program and construction of religious places should be launched. It is necessary to pay special attention to environmental sanitation. The government has to take responsibility for keeping the record of the income and expenditure of the temple. Besides, if the sewage can be managed on the bank of the Bagmati river the importance of this area would increase even more.

B. Write an essay in about 500 words on 'Importance of Tourism in Nepal'.

Answer: Nepal is known for being one of the most famous travel destinations in the world. With thousands of tourists visiting the county every year, Tourism in Nepal has soared to new heights. The capital city of the country, Kathmandu

Follow us on:

and the city of lakes, Pokhara are the top cities in the country to see a sharp increase in the number of tourists in recent years. From UNESCO world heritage sites to different ancient landmarks, from a diverse ethnic community to experiencing different cultures and traditions, all of which have been successful to catch the interest of foreigners to visit the country of Nepal.

Tourism heavily influences the working of Nepal's government. Tourism is the number one source to generate foreign currency in Nepal. As the tourism sector grows and more foreigners spend their time in Nepal, the inflow of the currency directly uplifts the working of the country. As Nepal imports more goods than exporting its local products, the foreign currency is the highest number two source to generate money for the country to compete internationally.

Foreigners take a keen interest in handicraft goods made from the local products using raw materials available in the country. Goods like carpets, status, portraits are in high demand by travelers. This helps the community to grow. It also expands the popularity of the Nepalese people's handiwork throughout the world.

When foreigners visit the country, they get to experience the local culture and traditions. Historical site visits and observing the art and architecture of famous UNESCO world heritage sites and landmarks help the country to spread its religious norms and values throughout the world. Tourism helps us to spread our influence in the world. Names of sites like Pashupatinath, Boudhanath, Muktinath, Swayambhunath, Lumbini, Kathmandu Durbar Square, Bhaktapur Durbar Square, Patan Durbar Square, Davis Falls, Phewa Lake, and more have been successfully spread in the world. This has led to an increase in tourist inflow to watch visit these places and their surroundings. This helps to generate easy income for people around the landmarks.

Grammar

B. Complete these sentences using the verbs given in the brackets.

- Letters are delivered by the postman every day. (deliver)
- This bag was found in the bus yesterday. (find)
- The gate is locked at 7:00 pm every evening. (lock)
- I was invited to the party last week. (invite)
- The telephone was invented by Graham Bell. (invent)
- Muna Madan was written by Devkota. (write)
- How much money was stolen in the robbery? (steal)
- Do you know cheese is made from milk? (make)
- I was born in Kathmandu, but was grown in Dhangadhi. (grow)

Follow us on:

C. Change the following sentences into passive.

a. I didn't fix the problem.

➤ The problem wasn't fixed by me.

b. Police protect the town.

➤ The town is protected by police.

c. John's mother raised him in a small town.

➤ He was raised in a small town by John's mother.

d. Someone painted the building last year.

➤ The building was built last year.

e. Alexander Fleming discovered penicillin in 1928.

➤ Penicillin was discovered in 1928 by Alexander Fleming.

f. Some students study grammar on the Internet.

➤ Grammar is studied on the internet by some students.

g. Someone had broken the window by 3:00 p.m.

➤ The window had been broken by 3: p.m.

h. A strange man was watching us.

➤ We were being watched by a strange man.

i. Tokyo will hold the Olympics in 2020.

➤ The Olympics will be held in 2020 by Tokyo.

j. We are working on the report right now.

➤ The report is being worked on right now by us.

k. My manager has told him to arrive earlier.

➤ He has been told to arrive earlier by my manager.

l. They could not have made the mistake.

➤ The mistake could not have been made by them.

m. I hope they are going to hire me soon.

➤ I hope I am going to be hired soon by them.

n. I don't like people staring at me.

➤ I don't like being stared at.

o. She likes people waving at her.

➤ She likes being waved at.

Follow us on:



p. Who told you the story?

► By whom were you told the story?

q. Is he repairing the bicycle?

► Is the bicycle being repaired by him?

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

[English](#)

[Nepali](#)

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Language Development

Unit 20 Science and Technology (Taking my Son to College, Where Technology has Replaced Serendipity)

Class 11 English Exercise

Christina Baker Kline

Ways With Words

A. Match the words with their correct definitions.

- a. **Freshman**: a first-year student at a university, college, or high school
- b. **Naive**: having a lack of experience or knowledge
- c. **Obliviously**: without conscious awareness
- d. **Brag**: says something in a boastful manner
- e. **Disposal**: action of throwing away something
- f. **Dorm**: dormitory, student residence hall or building
- g. **Suitemate**: someone who shares your bathroom/living room/kitchen
- h. **Incalculable**: not able to be calculated or estimated

B. Replace the bold words in (a-h) selecting synonyms from the box.

- a. Her story is **incredible** in the literal sense of the word.
- b. We often read the novels of the **potential** writers in the world.
- c. The Facebook users are **fragmented** but connected to each other through the Internet.
- d. Sometimes **unanticipated** events happen in our life.
- e. He paused, **scrutinizing** the faces of Anjana and Manju with his glittering eyes.
- f. I am sorry to say your handwriting is **indecipherable**.
- g. He is matured. He can **navigate** his own journey to make his career better.
- h. Gita's heart swelled with **delight**, translating her confidence into power.

C. Complete the sentences by choosing the correct word given in brackets.

- a. Does television **affect** children? (affect/effect)
- b. Does television have an **effect** on children? (affect/effect)
- c. Could you **lend** me your book, please? (borrow/lend)
- d. Can I **borrow** your pen? (borrow/lend)
- e. Prices seem to **rise** every year. (raise/rise)
- f. You can **raise** your hand if you want to ask a question. (raise/rise)
- g. What did he **say** to you? (say/tell)
- h. I can't **speak** Hindi. (speak/talk)

Follow us on:

- i. I will talk to you on the phone. (speak/talk)
- j. I think that's a very sensible idea. (sensible/sensitive)
- k. My teeth are very sensitive to cold. (sensible/sensitive)
- l. Our principal is a popular person. (principal/principle)
- m. I couldn't understand the principle of gravity. (principal/principle)
- n. All friends, expect Nabina, came to the party. (accept/except)
- o. Will you accept my request? (accept/except)
- p. They were making too much noise. (noise/sound)
- q. All she could hear was the sound of the waves. (noise/sound)
- r. Did you give him any advice for his career? (advice/advise)
- s. My parents advise me to be a teacher. (advice/advise)

Comprehension

Answer these questions.

a. Why did the author feel that she was lucky to be so naïve of her freshman year at college?

Answer: The author felt that she was lucky to be so naïve of her freshman year at college because the very ignorance navigated her to the path of wealth and status. Despite of being foolish, she got an opportunity to explore new things. So she felt lucky.

b. Why did she say that she went to college in the Stone Age?

Answer: She said that she went to college in the Stone Age because she compares her college year with her son's college year she found a vast difference. Technology was not such a use at her time. Compared to the present time, she was not so lucky to use cell phones, electronic gadgets to the fullest like his son is doing now. Seeing her son, using electronic devices and technology almost everywhere, she says that her time was so primitive, hence she said she went to college in the stone age.

c. What kinds of technological tools can Hayden use at his college life unlike at his mother's time?

Answer: Hayden uses every technological shortcut to make his living easier. He uses a mobile phone with Yale specific apps, Facebook, Twitter, Instagram and Youtube.

d. How has the internet and social sites affected the lifestyle of the youths?

Answer: The Internet has made the youths rely on nearly everything either little or big. It has made the life of youths easier forgetting to experience struggle and hard labour. With no exertion, they'll plan undertaking work depending upon search engines and software hampering the extension of the skyline of pondering and innovativeness. Social sites have given them opportunities to be

Follow us on:



connected to different people but they are fragmented because they know each other virtually. Due to the internet and social sites, the youths have missed the actual pleasure of discovering the real world.

e. What things about college life will Hayden really miss unlike his mother?

Answer: Hayden will miss real life interactions, usage of thinking capability and imagination, exploration and discoveries of various things in life dissimilar to his mom.

f. The writer says, “I worry that students today are more connected and more fragmented”. Isn’t this paradoxical? How?

Answer: The phrase I worry that students today are more connected and more fragmented is very contradictory and confusing. This line demonstrates that young people are largely linked via electronic means, but are separated physically and emotionally. In reality, they are worlds apart. It’s because they don’t know each other well that they are separated. They are not open to others who could help them to gather life’s important minutes, but unfortunately, it does not exist.

Critical Thinking

a. Do you think that advancements of technology can hinder the exposure students receive in school, and block them from gaining some of life’s most memorable moments? Give reasons in support of your answer.

Answer: Technology is the machines and tools we use to convert natural or mental resources into things we need, like energy or algorithms. Technology can be used in so many different ways, positive and negative, that the answers have become as convoluted and complicated as human interaction. It follows, therefore, that some technology is right for children in a learning and social environment, and some technology is not.

Most of the schools and colleges are using modern devices like laptops and tablets as a means of teaching. So the students are also using the same devices to be on par with the teachings of the teachers. In the present day, social media has evolved leaps and bounds, with 90% of the world’s population using social media. So the devices which are provided to the students for studying are instead used to be active on social media. Students are not studying with the help of these devices, they are interested in checking the posts and status updates of their near and dear ones and many other things. This is how technology is becoming a huge distraction for the learners, thus increasing the gap between students and educators.

In the present day, due to the huge advancement of technology, teachers are educating the students with different online tools instead of physically

Follow us on:



communicating with them, hence the students are unable to interact with the students and also cannot share problems with them. Teachers miserably fail to draw the attention of the student. It is recommended to use verbal communication with the students along with using online tools. So the students can learn the topics as well as they can share their problems with the teacher.

Thus its true that advancements of technology can hinder the exposure students receive in school, and block them from gaining some of life's most memorable moments.

b. Kline's essay focuses on the contrast between her son's freshman college experience and her own, but she also establishes what they have in common. Explain.

Answer: The essay entitled "Taking my son to College, Where Technology has Replaced Serendipity" written by Christina Baker Kline is about the contrast between her college experience and her son's experience. But the essay also includes the common things between her and her son. She talks about the experience of freshman college year in the same university. Although technology has replaced the way they do everything but still the education system was all same. All the old feelings and emotions were also the same. There were much more difficulty on her time comparing to her son's age but still, friendships and team working has not changed. These things are all same in some way. Exploration about the new things were limited to physical doings, but now at the time of his son, the exploration and research is still the same, but it is done via technology medium, via search engines, E-books rather than physical books. Relationship and friendship was the struggle for freshman at her time, still search for the companion was prominent. This thing still prevails in electronic form from facebook, instagram and social media.

c. Has the internet aided to broadening or narrowing the critical thinking capacity of youths or readers? How?

Answer: Internet is a global network of interconnected networks of computers. It makes it easier and quick for people to access information sitting at any corner of the world. Just like any other technology, internet too has its own share of positive and negative effects on society. If internet is used to gain and explore knowledge, it is broadening of knowledge, but if you started relying on internet answers with blunt creativity, it is narrowing of the critical thinking capacity. The world of internet is so infinite that it can seem overwhelming. All forms of media don't work in every setting. There needs to be a balance of modern technology in life, or you run the risk of losing out on developing fundamental skills. Internet is an excellent boost to your critical thinking skills, but you should be aware of some of the pitfalls that come along with it. Thus

Follow us on:



depending on how you're using it, internet can be enhancing or damaging to critical thinking.

Grammar

A. Fill in the gaps with suitable articles where necessary.

- a. Is he working as a university professor?
- b. My younger sister watches television a lot.
- c.
A: What did you get for your birthday?
B: I got a lot of good presents.
- d. I'm going to the Dominican Republic for my winter vacation.
- e. I have to go to a bank today to deposit some money.
- f. Durga was injured in the accident and was taken to the nearest hospital.
- g. Every parent should visit school to meet the teachers.
- h. Who is the woman in this photograph?
- i. There is a piano in the corner of the room.
- j.
A: Do you think he is lying?
B: No, he's the kind of a guy that always tells the truth.

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

[English](#)

[Nepali](#)

Follow us on:



Puspa Shrestha

Best Quality Resource Site for Class 11 And 12 Students
(Based on Updated Curriculum 2077)

Page | 134

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Literature

Unit 1.1 The Selfish Giant (Short Stories)

Class 11 English Exercise

Oscar Wilde

Symbols

1. The Child – the innocence
2. Wall – unwillingness to accept others in life
3. Winter – his cold nature
4. The wind and the frost – suffering, agony, and solitude(single)
5. Spring summer – represent happiness, joy
6. Tree – self-realization
7. The corner of the garden – the human life

Summary of The Selfish Giant by Oscar Wilde

The selfish giant is a popular fairy tale however there are a lot of symbols in the story which make it an allegorical story. The symbols used in this story have contributed a lot to intensify the meaning of the story.

The children are the most important characters who love to play in the giant's garden. Here, children represent innocence. They played in the giant's garden regardless of whom the property belongs to, however, the wall made by the giant restricted them from entering the garden. The wall represents the giant unwillingness to let others enter his life or property. The wall also symbolizes the selfish nature of human beings.

Similarly, when the giant arrives home, he rudely drives out the children from his garden. The winter takes over the whole change of his garden after he forbade the children from entering the garden. Here, the winter symbolizes the cold heart of the giant which keeps him isolated from love and happiness. The garden loses its beauty when the snow, wind, frost, and hail start ruling

Follow us on:

over there. The snow covers the grass, frost paints the trees, the wind roars around the garden. In this way, they represent the suffering, agony, and solitude of the giant. Furthermore, the corner of the garden is to symbolize his past deeds which lead to overall unhappiness in the garden.

When he saw the trees offering their arm to a child, he realizes his mistake and reflects on his mistake by helping the little boy to climb up a tree. He also destroyed the walls and allow children to play in his garden because he knew that it was him who kept the spring away. Spring, summer resembles joy, happiness, and prosperity which came back to the garden with the arrival of children.

The Selfish Giant – Complete Exercise

Understanding the text

Answer the following questions.

a. Where did the children use to play?

Answer: The children used to play in the Giant's garden.

b. What did the Snow and the Frost do to the garden?

Answer: The snow covered the grass with its large white cloak and Frost painted all the silver trees.

c. What did the giant hear when he was lying awake in bed?

Answer: The giant heard a beautiful music when he was lying awake in bed.

d. Why do you think spring season never came to the giant's garden?

Answer: I think the spring season never came to the giant's garden because he was cruel to the children.

e. How did the giant realise his mistake?

Answer: The giant realised his mistake when his garden was covered by snow and frost as he stopped children from visiting the garden.

Follow us on:

Reference to the context

A. Read the extracts given below and Ans the questions that follow.

a. “How happy we were there!” they said to each other.

i. Where does ‘there’ refer to?

Answer: ‘There’ refers to the Giant’s garden.

ii. What does ‘they’ refer to?

Answer: ‘They’ refers to the children who used to play in the Giant’s garden.

iii. Why are they saying so?

Answer: They are saying so because they aren’t allowed to play in the giant’s garden anymore as the giant had chased them out of his garden.

b. “I have many beautiful flowers,” he said; “but the children are the most beautiful flowers of all.”

i. Who is the speaker?

Answer: The speaker is the Giant.

ii. Who is he speaking to?

Answer: He is speaking to himself.

iii. Who are ‘the children’ that the speaker is referring to?

Answer: ‘The Children’ that the speaker is referring to are the small and innocent school kids who used to play in the Giant’s garden.

iv. Why is the speaker saying that ‘the children are the’?

Answer: The speaker says ‘children are the most.....’ because the children bring joy and happiness in the garden as like the flowers.

c. When the little child smiled at the Giant, and said to him, “You let me play once in your garden, today you shall come with me to my garden, which is Paradise,” shortly afterwards, the happy giant dies. What is the coincidence of this event? Describe it in relation to this fairy story.

Follow us on:

Answer: The coincidence of this event once, the giant let the little child play in his garden and make him happy and today the same child wants to take him to his garden paradise to make him happy in return, which means the final time of the giant has come and the little child is a messenger/ fairy who wants him to the heaven because of his noble works.

B. The story makes use of personification as one of the main figures of speech. Cite three examples of personification from the story. What is the significance of the seasons personified in the story?

Answer: The practice of representing the objects, qualities etc. as the human beings in art and literature is called personification. Three examples of personification from the story are the beautiful little flowers who slips back into the garden after seeing the notice board, the snow and the frost who says that the spring has forgotten this garden.

The story has the significance of the seasons personified. At the beginning, the seasons bless the garden with pleasant weather until the Giant sends the children away from his garden. Because of the Giant's unkindness to the children, the spring season leaves the garden. The seasons disfavor indicates that the Giant's selfishness goes against the natural order and thus deserves punishment. Thus the significance of the seasons personification is to show that if someone does bad then he/she will deserve the bad.

C. This story can be read as a fairy story, where the children, the seasons, the tree, the corner of the garden, the snow, the wind and the frost are all used as symbolism. Interpret those symbols.

Answer: The story 'The Selfish Giant' is a fairy tale. Here, the children symbolize innocence, love, compassion and blessings. Likewise the seasons represents life and death. The tree symbolizes patience and hope. The corner of the garden depicts the paradise. Finally the snow, the wind and the frost symbolize pain, suffering and discomfort.

D. Which figure of speech is used for 'winter, frost, snow, north wind, hail and little child'? Who is the little child compared to?

Answer: As a fairy tale, the story is full of figures of speech. The figure of speech is used for 'winter, frost, snow, north wind, hail

Follow us on:

and little child' is personification. The little child is compared to the God Almighty (Paradise).

Reference beyond the text

a. What is the main theme of the story?

Answer: The main theme of this story is selfishness and love. It is the story of transformation of selfish giant into selfless giant. At the beginning of the story, the giant was very selfish and wicked towards the children and he closes the gate of beautiful garden for them. But later he realizes his mistake when the children stop coming to the garden and the garden never experiences the spring season until and unless he allows them to play in his garden. At this point he realizes the meaning of love and sharing. This story is very much relatable to the nature of human beings. We hardly share our belongings to anyone if somebody is needy and we are selfish too. This story teaches us to share love and compassion to get love in return.

b. Does God punish those who are cruel to children and very selfish?

Answer: Yes, God punishes those who are cruel to children and very selfish. As in the story, Giant has really been so cruel to the children and selfish and he didn't let them play on the garden because of which spring never came in his garden. In the absence of children birds also did not sing. Once a flower bloomed out of the grass but after seeing the notice board, it also went back to sleep. Then came the North Wind and the hailstorm. Due to the giant's selfishness, autumn's golden fruits also did not come to his garden. In this way god punishes to those who are cruel to children and very selfish.

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Follow us on:



Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

English

Nepali

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Literature

Unit 1.2 The Oval Portrait (Short Stories)

Class 11 English Exercise

Edgar Allan Poe

Summary

The Oval Portrait is a short horror story by Edgar Allan Poe which deals with the theme of the relationship between art and life. The writer has presented this story with its dark setting and the mood of the narrator. This story begins with an injured narrator who takes shelter along with his servant in an abandoned mansion in the Apennines. They choose one of the rooms in the mansion. The narrator shows a keen interest in those strange paintings decorating the walls of a room.

At around midnight, he adjusts the candle in the room, closer to the books. The narrator immediately discovers a before unnoticed painting in an oval-shaped frame. It reveals the head and shoulders of a young girl. The narrator is quite attached to this painting because it seems very lively. Soon the narrator eagerly consults the book for an explanation of a picture. Then he discovered that the woman whose painting was made was the young bride of the artist who cared more about his work rather than anything else in the world including his wife too. On the other hand, the woman was the perfect wife in every respect except she was quite jealous of her husband's art. One day on demand of her artist husband, he starts painting of his wife. He was so much obsessed with capturing her beautifulness, that he rarely took his eyes off the canvas even to watch his wife. The wife remained humble and obedient and keep on giving the same pose for many weeks without a single word of complaint but her health becomes increasingly poor as the work continued. When the portrait is about to finish, the artist was excited and delighted with his perfect work. He then looks at his wife and found her dead.

Central Theme

Follow us on:

The central theme in “The Oval Portrait” presents the confusing relationship between art and life. This story has shown the destructive power or the addiction of art and love. Both art and love can lead anyone towards perfection whereas they can bring destructive results in anyone’s life too. Although the artist of this story has become successful through his artistic work, his wife became a victim. On the other hand, she lost her husband so extremely that she doesn’t reveal her pains and sufferings and lose her life. This story also suggests that a women’s beauty condensed her to death. The story has tried to reveal that excessive passion for something always gives bad results.

The Oval Portrait – Complete Exercise

Understanding the text

Answer the following questions.

a. Where did the narrator and his servant make forcible entrance?

Answer: The narrator and his servant made a forcible entrance in a desolate Chateau which was located in the Apennines of central Italy.

b. Which special picture did the narrator notice in the room?

Answer: The narrator noticed an oval-shaped picture of a young girl in the room.

c. Describe the portrait that the narrator saw in the room.

Answer: The portrait was in an oval-shaped frame. It revealed the head and shoulders of the young woman. The arms, the bosom, and even the ends of the radiant hair dissolved untraceably into the unclear yet deep shadow which formed the background of the whole.

d. What is the relationship between the portrait painter and its subject?

Answer: The relationship between the portrait painter and its subject is of Husband and wife.

Follow us on:

Reference to the context

a. What is the central theme of the story? Who is the woman depicted in the oval portrait?

Answer: The central theme of the story “The Oval Portrait” presents the confusing relationship between art and life. This story has shown the destructive power or the addiction of art and love. Both art and love can lead anyone towards perfection whereas they can bring destructive results in anyone’s life too. Although the artist of this story has become successful through his artistic work but his wife became a victim. She lost her husband so extremely that she doesn’t reveal her pains and sufferings and lose her life. This story also suggests that a women’s beauty collapsed her to death.

The woman depicted in the oval portrait is the wife of a passionate painter who has painted this oval portrait.

b. “The Oval Portrait” is a short horror story by Edgar Allan Poe involving the disturbing circumstances surrounding a portrait in a chateau. Elaborate.

Answer: This short story has presented a terrible and gloomy setting of a barren Chateau in one of the mountains range (Apennines) of central Italy. The Chateau in this story is completely deserted and very old fashioned. The Chateau itself drowned in darkness in a desolated place. The apartments inside Chateau were so unmanaged and dirty though it was richly decorated previously. The walls were full of tapestries and panting creating a gloomy atmosphere. The life-like portrait has been placed in one of the dark corners. The surrounding of the lifelike portrait is so disturbing due to the unmanaged condition everywhere. Thus it looked quite like a horror story.

c. “The Oval Portrait” suggests that the woman’s beauty condemns her to death. Discuss.

Answer: In the oval portrait, the writer has symbolized the danger of trying to capture and exert ownership over physical beauty. The framed portrait of the artist’s wife represents a kind of metaphorical imprisonment and focuses only on the young woman’s outer beauty rather than her inner self. In this sense, a lady is present as an object since the story implies that the man

Follow us on:



AR Dinesh



puspas.com.np



Puspa Shrestha

(including her husband) viewed her as nothing but a beautiful sight to look at. Her actual real-life beauty and her personality were consequently lost forever in the process and only immortalized on the canvas.

d. Discuss the story as a frame narrative (a story within a story).

Answer: The frame narrative is a literary technique that reveals a story within a story told by the main or the supporting character. A character starts telling a story to other characters or he sits down to write a story, telling the details to the audience.

Here the story starts with an unnamed narrator and his entering in a Chateau with a different plot and setting. But once this place is lit with candles, a painting is revealed and the next story starts with the description of the oval portrait. In this way, the author switches to a new story within a story.

e. The story is told in a descriptive style, with plenty of imagery and symbolism. Which images and symbols do you find in the story?

Answer: The Oval Portrait contains distinct gothic elements penetrating the setting and the mood of the narrator. The dark and shadowy settings lead to confusion and leave a horror impression on the readers. It also contains the dark and the mysterious part full of a horror scene, fear, death, and gloom.

Symbols

1. Woman in the oval portrait = victim
2. Oval Portrait = immortality of art
3. Frame = general objectification
4. Painter = fanaticism
5. The dark gloominess of abandoned house = classic background of the gothic novel.

f. What does the expression “She was dead!” mean?

Answer: The expression “She was dead” means the shocking moment of the death of the painter’s wife on the chair. The painter was quite obsessed with his painting that he forget about the surrounding and even his beautiful wife. Hence the obsession of artist towards painting took his wife life.

Follow us on:

Reference beyond the text

a. Do you think there is life in art?

Answer: “The Oval Portrait” is a frame story that centers on life and art. The outer story follows an unnamed narrator who spends a night in a chateau in the Apennines. While he was there, he admires the impressive paintings but was more obsessed with a portrait of a beautiful young woman which is enclosed in an oval frame. Then he explores the inner story where he found the tragic life of a beautiful girl whose husband was much obsessed with his art. He has disengaged himself from reality. For him, his canvas became more real than the reality itself which proves beneficial for his art but disastrous for his real life. So, in a literary sense, the artist creates life in the art and tries to find life within it but with a general view, art is just a creation that is created to display and has meaning related to different things.

b. As a thing of art nothing could be more admirable than the painting itself. Explain.

Answer: I totally agree with the above statement. Painting is really a very admirable form of art. The painters really work hard and spend much time to create quality paintings with meanings. A picture can paint a thousand words. The painting itself speaks in its literal manner. Here in this story, the oval portrait is one of the finest examples which has surprised the narrator. He feels completely puzzled to see that painting and start describing about it. True arts baffles all formulas and it's true that as a thing of art nothing could be more admirable than the painting itself.

c. A more intense look at the painting reveals the illusion. Have you noticed any such painting?

Answer: Yes, I have noticed such painting which reveals the illusion. A painting can't be judged at a single look. An artist spends days to make an art. Every objects in an art possess special meaning. The painting becomes more meaningful when it is watched by the viewer who is passionate about paintings. But, for those viewers like me who don't have an idea about paintings find illusion all the time. In my case, I watched a typical painting in a museum near my house for a long time but I didn't get meanings about it.

Follow us on:



AR Dinesh



puspas.com.np



Puspa Shrestha

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

English

Nepali

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Literature

Unit 1.3 God Sees the Truth but Waits (Short Stories)

Class 11 English Exercise

Leo Tolstoy

About Author

Name – Leo Tolstoy

Date of birth – 1828

Nationality – Russian

Death – 1910

- He was a novelist, short story writer, play writer, and essayist.
- His best works: *War and Peace*, *Anna Karenina*.
- His fiction includes dozens of short stories and several novellas such as *The Death of Ivan Ilyich*, *Family Happiness*, and so on.

Main Theme

The main theme of this story is about the suffering of a person who has spent his Twenty-six years in prison for false conviction without any crime. He has waited for God’s decision in his lifetime.

Finally, God’s decision arrived, but it was too late, so the author wishes to convey the message that God is always evaluating our patience and attempting to teach us about life values.

Summary

This short story “God Sees the Truth but Waits” is a heart touching short story by Leo Tolstoy.

This story is about a Young Merchant whose name was Ivan Dmitrich Aksionov from Vladimir a city in Russia. He was quite a handsome man who had two shops and a house. Before marriage, he used to drink a lot and show his bully behavior but after

Follow us on:



marriage, he gave up drinking and lived happily with his wife and children.

One day Ivan planned to go to Nizhny Fair to sell his goods. Before setting off, his wife stopped him from going to the fair. She related that nightmare which she has dreamed. In her dream, she saw that he has returned back with grey hair. Aksionov did not believe in her dream and leaves for the journey.

On his way, he met another merchant with whom he spent his night together in an inn. The next day he got up early and continued his journey. But on his way, two local soldiers stopped him for inquiry. They informed Aksionov about the merchant murder whose dead body has been found in the inn's room with his throat cut. Aksionov trembled with fear. Soldiers took him back to the inn's room and searched his luggage where they found a blood-stained knife. So he was imprisoned despite his appeal of being innocent.

Later his wife came to visit him and asked him to tell the truth. She might suspect him because he was an alcoholic before marriage. He felt very sad thinking that his wife did not believe him.

So he thought only God knew the truth. He was severely punished and sent to Siberia. He suffered for 26 years in prison. Within the time he became a prayer of God, become humble, and had grey hair. As time passed, a new prisoner named Makar Semyonich come into prison. He behaved as if he was familiar with Aksionov and the event. One night Aksionov saw Makar was digging a hole through the prison but he did not tell the governor about the incident. So Makar felt gratitude for him and confessed that he was the real murderer of the merchant. He felt sorry for what he had done. So Makar confessed the murder to the governor. However, when his release came, Aksionov was found dead.

Analysis

- This story promotes superstitions and belief in God. It also highlights the significance of dream.

Follow us on:



- It gives the lesson that we should listen to the other advice because sometimes their advice might turn into something very important.
- We should carefully check up our belongings before we leave for somewhere.

God Sees the Truth but Waits- Complete Exercise

Understanding the text

Answer the following questions.

a. What bad habits did Aksionov have before his marriage?

Answer: Aksionov used to drink before his marriage and was riotous when he drank too much.

b. What can be the meaning of his wife's dream?

Answer: The meaning of his wife's dream can be the bad fortune or unlock.

c. Why did Aksionov think of killing himself?

Answer: When the Aksionov meet the real murderer of the businessman, he had lost everything. He was not getting support from the family members too, kept in prison for 26 years, grown old before time. So he thought of killing himself.

d. Why did Makar disclose that he had killed the merchant?

Answer: Makar disclosed that he had killed the merchant because he realized his mistake and thought that he should not let other be punished for his crime. He did so because he felt pity over Aksionov.

e. Why doesn't Aksionov wish to return to his family at the end of the story?

Answer: Aksionov doesn't wish to return his family his wife was dead, he didn't know about his children and lived in the name of God at the end of the story.

Reference to the context

Follow us on:



a. “Well, old man,” repeated the Governor, “tell me the truth: who has been digging under the wall?”

i. Who is that old man?

Answer: That old man is Aksionov.

ii. Which truth is the speaker asking about?

Answer: The speaker is asking about the truth of digging an escape hole.

iii. Which wall does the speaker mean?

Answer: The speaker means the prison’s wall.

b. Describe Aksionov’s character.

Answer: Aksionov is the protagonist of the story “God sees the truth but waits” written by Leo Tolstoy. He is a young merchant. He is a handsome, fair-haired, curly-headed fellow, full of fun and very fond of singing. He used to drink much before marriage but later on, he changed himself and became a good man. He had virtuous qualities such as faith, forgiveness, freedom, and acceptance. His comfortable life is disrupted when he is framed for a murder he didn’t commit and was sent to a Siberian prison camp. He earns a reputation as a good person among the prison officials and fellow prisoners. After finding himself imprisoned with the man who framed him, Aksionov is ready to kill himself. However, at the end of the story, he is able to forgive Semyonich. He dies shortly before the authorities order him to be released.

c. What is the theme of the story?

Answer: In the story ‘God Sees the Truth, But Waits’ by Leo Tolstoy we have the theme of guilt, forgiveness, faith, conflict, freedom and acceptance. Narrated in the third person by an unnamed narrator the reader realizes after reading the story that Tolstoy may be exploring the theme of forgiveness.

If the plea of his wife to the Czar is denied, Aksionov realises that he cannot rectify his wrong. He commits himself to God to offer him that righteousness which a man cannot give him.

Aksionov becomes a modest and pious person in jail. Officials and inmates appreciate him in settling disputes for his neutrality.

Aksionov’s trust in God is so great that he thinks that he must be

Follow us on:

wicked to deserve God's tortured life.

After Aksionov is reluctant to report the drilling of Semyonich's tunnel, Semyonich is disturbed by the compassion of Aksionov. Aksionov eventually gives forgiveness to Semyonich.

d. Which symbols are used in the story and what do they indicate?

Answer: The most important symbols in this short story are Aksionov's house (and two shops) and the Siberian prison mine where he is sentenced to hard labor. His house and two shops represent his family, his material possessions, and his earthly affairs. The prison itself is a symbol of his suffering and his eventual spiritual transformation.

Reference beyond the text

a. What role does religion play in Aksionov's life? How does he undergo a spiritual transformation in the story?

Answer: This story is all about Aksionov who lost hope and just trusted God. Though he didn't commit any crime, he was imprisoned for 26 years. Makar revealed the truth that he was the real murderer. Aksionov forgave him for accepting the truth and attained self-realization. But when the order of his release came, he was already dead. Our weakness can only make the problem stronger. Being hopeful can make all things possible. The title means that every decision of God needs enough time. This story is for all those people who lose hope and don't believe in God. We should wait for the truth to win with a faith in God. God gives us the answer to all our problems, as the title says 'God Sees the Truth, But Waits'. At the end of the story there is a shift from materialism to spiritualism.

b. What does the story tell us about the existence of an unfair system of justice?

Answer: The story tells us that one who commits the crime must be punished and kept in prison but not the innocent one. As here in the story, Aksionov did not commit any crime but he was kept in prison whereas the real murder Makar was not punished. Thus this story depicts about the unfair system of justice.

Follow us on:

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

English

Nepali

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Literature

Unit 1.4 The Wish (Short Stories)

Class 11 English Exercise

Roald Dahl

About Author

Roald Dahl was a British novelist, short story writer, poet, screenwriter, and wartime fighter pilot. His books have been sold more than 250 million copies worldwide. Dahl was born in Wales to Norwegian immigrant parents. He served in the Royal force during the Second World War.

The story “The Wish” is about a young child and his imaginative game of carpet. This story has presented the child’s wish as well as the frightening event of his childhood.

Summary

The story “The Wish” is about a young boy who had a frightening event in his childhood. At the beginning of the scene, we find an unnamed child looking at his kneecap’s scab and bent forward to examine it closely. He picked his scab gently which fell upon the edge of the red carpet. When he moved near the scab different colours of the carpet attracted his attention. He creatively imagined each different colour represent something. In his imagination, he supposed the red coloured spots as lumps of coal that could burn him, black colour as a poisonous snake that could bite him, and yellow colour as the only safe zone for him where he could step and cross the huge carpet to get inside, he would be gifted a puppy for his birthday.

So the boy begins his quest. The first part is easygoing but reached some difficult parts and has to take long strides. He wobbles but stretched out his arm to keep himself in a steady position. Then reaching a turning point, he chooses left because it’s difficult but black spots were less there. He reaches the halfway point and

Follow us on:

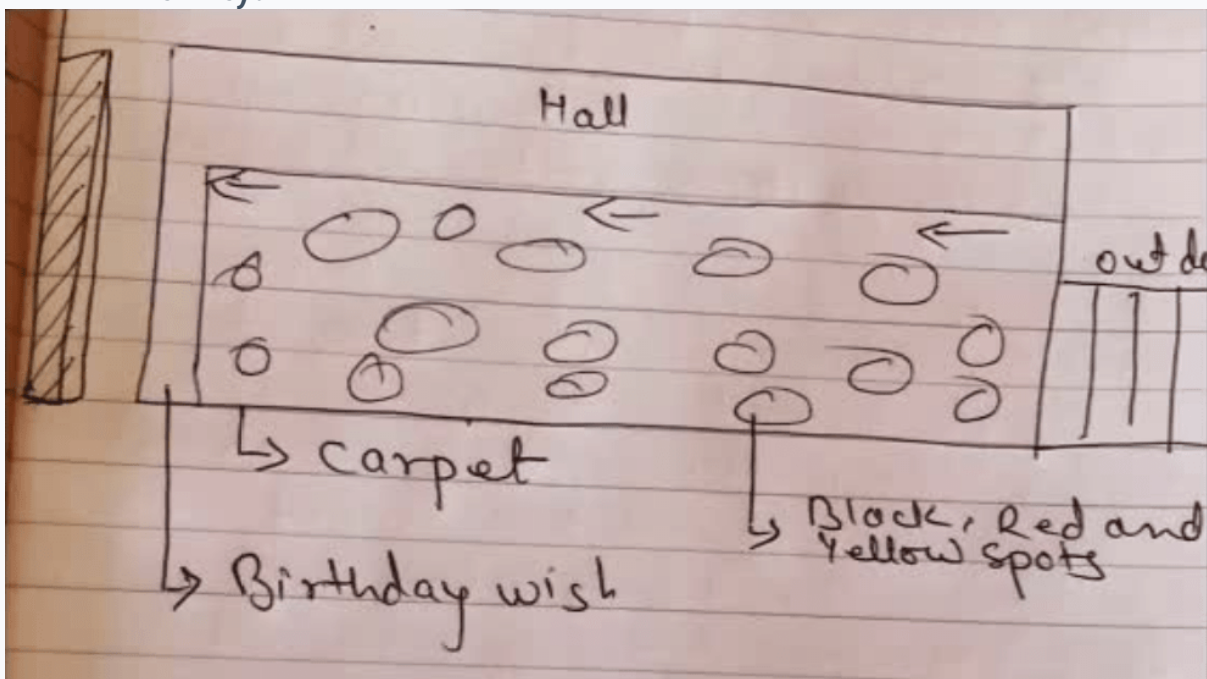


knows he cannot turn back or jump off. Then he begins to feel panic rising in his chest. He takes another step to the only close yellow spot and his foot is only a centimeter from the black patch. A snake stirs and raises its head to watch him. Although he was trying to balance himself it did not work. He started to cry as he touched the black.

And the story ends with his mother who was looking for him behind a house outside the sunshine.

Analysis and Interpretation of The Wish

- The story “The Wish” is about a young boy’s fantasy in which his carpet is alive with snake and fire. The writer has used imagery and metaphor which helps to reflect on the delicacy of our childhood innocence.
- Unnecessary fear is harmful.
- Fear causes people to make bad choices.
- The images and metaphor represent the obstacles and challenges he faces as he matures. Vivid challenges that Dahl uses to reinforce the metaphor include the scab, red spots on carpet, black sections, etc. He faces many challenges in pursuit of his goal which represent the obstacles in his path to maturity.



A pictorial representation of the room.

Follow us on:

The Wish – Complete Exercise

Understanding the text

Answer the following questions.

a. What did the child do to the scab on his knee?

Answer: The child gently picked the scab off his cut with his finger nails and put it on his thigh. Finally he flipped it with his finger.

b. What kind of effect did the carpet have on the child?

Answer: The child became extremely amazed to see the red carpet. He had never really notice it before in such a way. The different colors of carpet seemed to brighten mysteriously and spring out at him in a most dazzling way. He was thoroughly lost in those colors and his imagination.

c. What was he afraid of while walking across the carpet?

Answer: He was afraid of the black poisonous snakes and the red coals while walking across the carpet.

d. What motivated and encouraged the child to start and continue on his journey?

Answer: His wish of getting a puppy on his birthday or as a birthday gift motivated and encouraged the child to start and continue on his journey.

e. What did the child see as he looked down on the black patterns of the carpet?

Answer: The child saw different colours brightening mysteriously. He was lost in different colours' spots. He kept on thinking in his imagination about the colours and their different forms. Hence, the child saw the poisonous snake with the oily body of snake arising to catch or bite him as he looked down on the black patterns of the carpet.

Reference to the context

Follow us on:



a. The writer creates two voices in the story. Who are they?

Answer: Yes, the writer creates two voices in the story and they were (a narrator) and the voice of the young boy i.e. the child.

b. Read the extracts given below and answer the questions that follow.

“...the black parts are snakes, poisonous snakes, adders mostly, and cobras, thick like tree-trunks around the middle, and if I touch one of them, I’ll be bitten and I’ll die before tea time. And if I get across safely, without being burnt and without being bitten, I will be given a puppy for my birthday tomorrow.”

i. What does ‘the black part’ mean?

Answer: The black part means the difficulty, challenges and suffering in the journey.

ii. Who is the speaker?

Answer: The speaker is a young boy.

iii. Why doesn’t the speaker want to be burnt?

Answer: He doesn’t want to be burnt because he wants to reach across the carpet safely to receive the gift ‘a puppy’ on his birthday.

c. Which images and metaphors are used in the story?

Answer: The main metaphor in the story “The Wish” by Roald Dahl is the child’s journey along the carpet as a representation of the obstacles and challenges he faces as he matures. Vivid images that Dahl uses to reinforce the metaphor include the scab as the boy’s primary challenge, the red spots on the carpet as hot lumps of coal, and the black sections as evil poisonous snakes.

d. Summarize the short story “The Wish” in about 200 words.

Answer: ([Look at top of the page](#))

e. The story shows the events through the eyes of the narrator and the child. Comparing the two styles, who presents a more interesting or effective view for the readers? Why?

Answer: In “The Wish,” a boy uses his imagination to travel across a red, black, and yellow carpet. The child’s represents the story in more interesting and effective than the narrator’s, because it is vivid and suspenseful. The child was a in a hardship situation and

Follow us on:



AR Dinesh



puspas.com.np



Puspa Shrestha

he faces hardships and won all the challenges as motivated by a Birthday gift as a puppy by completing his journey at the end.

f. Is “The Wish” a story about self-confidence overcoming fear or about greed? Give your arguments.

Answer: Roald Dahl’s “The Wish” is about self-confidence overcoming fear rather than about greed as it is all about self-confidence and overcoming fear. Admittedly, “greed,” the desire for a puppy, is a motivating factor. However, the puppy motivator is a fantasy that boy has made up to help him overcome his fear of crossing the treacherous carpet. He says to himself, ‘if I get across safely, without being burnt and without being bitten, I will be given a puppy for my birthday tomorrow.

The child seems fearful while watching his scab. He thinks much about picking it. He raises many questions with himself. He picks out his scab being panic. But when he sees the carpet his fear increases high. He gathers his confidence to cross the carpet. He creates his obstacles supposing the colours as coals and snakes. He even puts his goal across the carpet. He moves on bravely on the carpet wishing for a puppy on his birthday as a birthday gift. He tries his best to overcome his fear. His self-confidence and his wish end as he falls down in black colours.

Even the puppy becomes part of his project of overcoming fears to achieve a goal: But the fear of not getting the puppy compelled him to go on. This tale enters into the mind of an imaginative child and reflects the child’s ability to turn something as common place as a patterned carpet into a scene of adventure and challenge in which he can act out his fears in a safe environment.

Reference beyond the text

a. Do you think our wish can be fulfilled? Why or why not?

Answer: Having wishes is significant in itself. But not all the wants, desire and wishes are fulfilled. We need hard and complicated practice to fulfil our wish, want, desire, and interest. If a wish comes true, it is one of the most beautiful things on earth. It is, therefore, essential to deal constructively with the obstacles on the

Follow us on:

way to your wish. Some of the common hurdles that stops us from fulfilling our wishes are:

- I have no money for it / I don't want to spend my money on it
- I want to, but I don't have time for it / I'm too caught up in my everyday life
- I'm scared. Fear of failure. Afraid of making the wrong decision. Afraid to disappoint other people
- I have doubts whether it is right for me

So to fulfill our wishes we should deal with above mentioned problems. For this we can do the following things:

- Try to realize the wish in the small version. Try to satisfy the need behind the wish.
- Trick everyday life and proceed in small steps.
- Address fears and debunk them as much as possible.
- Create clarity. Get a clear picture of where we want to go.
- Strengthen self-image so that our wishes becomes possible.

b. Why do you think some people might have a frightening nature? What would you suggest to them to overcome it?

Answer: Some people might have a frightening nature due to the lack of self-confidence and being less sociable. Some people, especially innocent ones easily lose their confidence as they face obstacles in their paths of life.

I would suggest the following points to overcome it:

- Learn more about your fear, this first step can be the hardest one but it's also absolutely necessary.
- Use your imagination in positive ways.
- Use your brain in a different way than usual.
- Focus on your breathing.
- Practice mindfulness.
- Use nature as your therapist.

THE END

Follow us on:



If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

[English](#)

[Nepali](#)

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Literature

Unit 1.5 Civil Peace (Short Stories)

Class 11 English Exercise

Chinua Achebe

Main Summary

This story is about a Nigerian family who lived in Enugu a place in Eastern Nigeria. This family has faced and experienced the devastating Nigerian civil war. The protagonist Jonathan Iwegbu was able to keep his bicycle which he turned into a taxi to make money. In two weeks he makes 150 pounds. Jonathan then travels to Enugu to search for his home, and to his surprise, it's still standing when other structures around it are demolished. The house needs some repairs, so he gathered all the materials and hired a carpenter to make it look like a home again. He then moves to his house with his family back in. The entire family works hard to earn money and rebuild their lives. The children pick the mango and sell them to the soldier's wife while Maria makes Akara balls to sell to their neighbors. After finding that his job as a miner is not a possibility, he decides to run a bar for soldiers out of his house.

Jonathan gets an egg rasher for turning in rebel currency to the treasury and gave him 20 pounds. The next night, a large group of robbers shows up at his house demanding 1000 pounds. Jonathan and his family were in terror. They called out for help from the police and the neighbour but no one comes there to help. At last, Jonathan informed them that he did not have 100 and swore about having the total amount of 20 pounds in his house. The thieves agreed to accept the same money.

The next morning the neighbours came over to show sympathy but Jonathan and his family weren't at home. they were at their days work. Life goes as usual for Jonathan because Nothing Puzzles God meaning that robbery has a great meaning in God's eyes.

Follow us on:



Civil Peace Class 11 Exercise: Questions and Answers Solutions

Understanding the text

Answer the following questions.

a. Why did Jonathan think of himself as ‘extraordinarily lucky’?

Answer: Jonathan thought of himself as ‘extraordinarily lucky’ because he had survived the Civil War along with his wife and children.

b. What are the ‘five blessings’ for which Jonathan is grateful?

Answer: The ‘five blessings’ for which Jonathan is grateful are his head, his wife Maria’s head, and the heads of three out of their four children. That means he is grateful for the survival of five family members.

c. Why did Jonathan mistrust the officer who wanted to take his bicycle? What does this tell you about the situation in Nigeria?

Answer: Jonathan mistrusted the officer who wanted to take his bicycle because the officer easily accepted bribe exchange of his bicycle. This tells us that the situation of Nigeria was so much worse as the government officers were corrupted and used to take bribes from the citizens.

d. What visitors might be at the door? Are Jonathan and his wife completely surprised? Explain.

Answer: The visitors who knock at the door of Jonathan’s house might be the thieves. Jonathan and his wife are completely shocked due to fear as it was midnight and the thieves are knocking at the door violently.

e. Why does no one in the neighborhood respond when the thieves pound on Jonathan’s door? Why do the thieves call for the police?

Answer: No one in the neighborhood responds when the thieves pound on Jonathan’s door because they are scared of the thieves. The thieves called for the police because they knew very well that no one will come to support Jonathan’s family.

Follow us on:



AR Dinesh



puspas.com.np



Puspa Shrestha

Reference to the context

a. What does Jonathan mean by his expression “Nothing puzzles God”? What does this expression reveal about his character? Explain by citing details from the story.

Answer: In the story “Civil Peace”, Jonathan uses this expression “Nothing puzzles God” every time when something miraculous happens with him. He uses this line when he gets his bicycle back in fine condition out of the ground. Next, he uses it when he finds his house is still standing after the war. By “Nothing puzzles God” he means that anything can happen, but Almighty God, being omniscient, is not surprised and puzzled by anything which means that God knows each and every thing. The last time he uses it at the end of the story after his family is robbed of the exgratia. This expression reveals that he is quite optimistic person who has been believing in God. He feels too delighted to get miracles in his life. This expression also reveals that he is a good person who enjoys everything he has but never laments on his loses. Therefore, his character was optimistic, hopeful and religious.

Or,

He uses the expression “Nothing Puzzles God” every time when something miraculous happens to him. He means to relay that God knows everything but presents in puzzling form. This expression reveals his optimistic character. He is overjoyed to be receiving miracles one after another in his life. He is a good person who does not tolerate wrongdoing. He is a sharp individual who has a strong faith in God. He and his family believe that adversity is the only way to return to a normal life. He has no remorse for his loss.

b. How does Jonathan change as he experiences the conflicts in his life? Explain.

Answer: Jonathan is a hardworking person who believes in his hard labour as well as god the most. He is quite optimistic person who never loses his hope. He has experienced many conflicts in his life. He has lost his child during the war but he believes himself lucky to

Follow us on:



get 5 inestimable blessings. Jonathan keeps on doing his hard labour for the sake and welfare of his family keeping faith or believes in God. He changes according to the demands of the time and his own family needs.

c. Read the extract and answer the questions below.

“To God who made me; if you come inside and find one hundred pounds, take it and shoot me and shoot my wife and children. I swear to God. The only money I have in this life is this twenty pounds egg-rasher they gave me today ...”

i. Who is the speaker?

Answer: Jonathan is the speaker.

ii. Who is the speaker talking to?

Answer: The speaker is talking to the thieves or robbers.

iii. Who does “they” refer to?

Answer: “They” refers to the officials of the treasury i.e. the government.

d. Nigerian English has words like soja ‘soldier’ and katakata ‘confusion’, ‘trouble’ derived apparently from English words but transformed by native languages’ phonologies. What does the author’s use of dialect here add to the story?

Answer: Nigerian English has words like Soja “soldier” and katakata “confusion”, “trouble” delivered apparently from English words but transformed by Native language phonologies. The author added dialects here in the story because of the following reasons:

- To focus on the native language
- To promote the dialects
- To know the status of living people in Nigeria
- To promote the nationality

e. Why do you think the thieves who come to rob Jonathan speak English with a heavier African accent than Jonathan does?

Answer: The thieves who come to rob Jonathan speak English with a heavier African accent than Jonathan does to show that they were white Americans so that no one could doubt on them and also to prove their superiority.

Follow us on:

f. The title of the story “Civil Peace” itself is ironical as there is little to differentiate ‘civil peace’ from ‘civil war’. Do you think that the title of this story is appropriate, or would “Civil War” have been a better title? Explain.

Answer: The title of the story “Civil Peace” is especially interesting because it is used in an ironic sense. The story follows Jonathan Iwegbu as he collects the fragments of his life after the end of the Nigerian Civil War. The Nigerian Civil War, also known as the Biafran War, was a protracted conflict that resulted because a section of Nigeria attempted to secede and form its own country. The war leaves a tremendous amount of destruction in its wake, and Jonathan gathers up what he can to reestablish his life. The title of the story is ironic because even though the war has come to an end, the area is still chaotic and filled with strife. Indeed, a gang of robbers use the term “civil peace” when they rob Iwegbu and his family in the dead of night. Thus, Achebe uses the title ironically to highlight the violence still present in a post-war Nigeria.

Reference beyond the text

a. How would you describe the civil peace in Nigeria?

Answer: The condition of the Civil peace in Nigeria wasn't good. After the war, the time of the civil peace was the time of the resettlement. There was nothing new for the people. People had to face various problems during that time. The government's law during that time was good. There were many risks in people's life. Thieves used to do loots and beat people without having any fear of law. Though the Civil piece prevailed there, there was Anarchy everywhere.

b. What kind of attitude towards life do you think you would have if your situation was similar to that of Jonathan's?

Answer: If my situation was similar to that of Jonathan's, I would have similar optimism about my life and my family. I would be ready to face any challenges so as to protect my family as like Jonathan did. I would try to do hard labour keeping faith in God for the welfare of my relatives. I would try to be quite away from violence. Hence I think that I would have positive, optimist and

Follow us on:

energetic attitude towards life if my situation was similar to that of Jonathan's.

c. Draw the character sketch of Jonathan Iwegbu.

Answer: Jonathan Iwegbu- Jonathan is a round character. His main trait is optimism, however some of his smaller traits are, peacefulness, persuasiveness, and calmness. He is a static character; he stays the same through the whole story. He does not waste his time to look back on the things that have troubled him in the past, he keeps calm and carries on with his life and deals with whatever happens next. His optimism is shown with every main event in the story.

First off, the war has ended. He is happy to come out of it alive with his wife, his bike, and three out of four of his children; one child has died. The fact that his child has died does not seem to trouble him on the outside. It probably does on the inside, however, he does not let it get to him. He stops thinking about it and instead of being upset because of the death of his child, he is happy for everyone that has survived. Also, he refers to his bike as a taxi once, which shows more optimism.

When he gets to his old house it is broken down. He is calm and gathers up some materials to fix it instead of getting mad over it.

His old job as a minor isn't available anymore, so he starts a new job of his own and opens up a bar.

Thieves come to his house and try to rob him of money. He tries to find the most peaceful way out of it. After paying all the money he had he once again, he remains calm and carries on.

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Follow us on:



Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

English

Nepali

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Literature

Unit 1.6 Two Little Soldiers (Short Stories)

Class 11 English Exercise

Guy de Maupassant

Summary

Luc and Jean are two soldiers who habitually spend their free time on Sundays away from the barracks, out in the countryside. Their day off has taken on the character of a ritual. Every Sunday, they bring food for breakfast to the same spot in the woods and lie back to enjoy the food, wine, and sights of an area that reminds them of home.

Eventually, their ritual comes to include a bit of innocent ogling of a young village girl who brings her cow out to pasture every week at the same time. One Sunday, however, the girl speaks to them on her way to the pasture, and when she returns later, she shares the cow's milk with them and leaves them with a promise to meet the following Sunday.

The next weekend, Jean suggests that they bring something for her. They settle on candy as an appropriate present, but when the girl arrives, both are too shy to tell her that they have brought something. Finally, Luc tells the girl of the treat, and Jean, who always carries the provisions, give the bonbons to her.

As the weeks pass, the girl becomes the topic of conversation for these soldiers as they spend time at the barracks, and the three become fast friends. The girl begins to share their Sunday breakfast meal and appears to devote equal attention to the two recruits.

Then, in an uncharacteristic move, Luc seeks leave on a Tuesday, and again the following Thursday. He borrows money from Jean on that day but offers no explanation for his behavior. Jean lends the money.

Follow us on:

The following Sunday, when the girl appears with the cow, she immediately rushes up to Luc and they embrace ardently. Jean is hurt because he is left out and does not understand why the girl has suddenly turned all of her attention to Luc. Luc and the girl go off to care for the cow and disappear into the woods for a long time. Jean is stupefied. When they return, the lovers kiss again, and the girl offers Jean a kind “Good evening” before going away.

Neither soldier speaks of the incident, but as they return to their barracks they stop momentarily on the bridge over the Seine. Jean leans over toward the water, farther than he should in Luc’s judgment, then suddenly tumbles into the torrent. Luc can do nothing; he watches in anguish as his good friend drowns.

Two Little Soldiers – Complete Exercise

Understanding the text

Answer the following questions.

a. Why do the two soldiers spend their free time on Sundays away from the barrack out in the countryside?

Answer: The two soldiers spend their free time on Sundays away from the barracks out in the countryside because they have found a spot which reminds them of home and they do not feel happy elsewhere.

b. Why does the girl become the topic of conversation for these soldiers?

Answer: The girl becomes the topic of conversation of these soldiers because both of them have fallen in love with her.

c. Why does deception enter into their friendship?

Answer: Deception enters into their friendship because Luc used to secretly leave the barracks to meet the girl without informing his friends.

d. Do you think that Luc is a betrayer of friendship?

Answer: Yes I think that Luc is a betrayer of friendship as he has

Follow us on:

broken the faith of his friend Jean. He leaves the barracks without telling anything to his friend so that he can meet the countryside girl whom Jean loves equally.

e. What is the cause of suicide of Jean? Do you think that it was the only release of his love?

Answer: The cause of suicide of Jean was his friend Luc because he is mentally disturbed by the love affair of his friend Luc with the girl whom he loves much. I don't think suicide was the only one way to release his love. He could have expressed his feeling to the girl or could have moved on in his life accepting Luc's love instead of committing suicide.

Reference to the context

a. What is the central theme of the story?

Answer: The central theme of this story is the incompatibility between friendship and love. Jean and Luc are best friends under the most trying of circumstances. When both fall in love with the same girl, feeling of hatred, jealousy raised between them and hence that friendship cannot survive, and it ends in tragic circumstances.

b. "What are you doing here? Are you watching the grass grow?"

i. Who is the speaker?

Answer: The dairy maid is the speaker.

ii. What does the word "here" indicate?

Answer: "Here" means the place where the two soldiers visit every weekend.

iii. Who does "you" refer to?

Answer: "You" refers to the two soldiers Jean and Luc.

c. "He leaned—he—he was leaning—so far over—that his head carried him away—and—he—fell—he fell—"

Follow us on:

i. Who is the speaker?

Answer: The speaker is Luc.

ii. Why is the speaker speaking with interruption?

Answer: The speaker is speaking with interruption because he is in pain and scared of the death of Jean.

iii. What does he mean when he says “he–fell–he fell–”?

Answer: He means that Jean fell into the river.

d. Two Little Soldiers can be viewed as a series of dramatic scenes. Describe the story as tragedy.

Answer: In a literary tragedy, a protagonist is typically brought to ruin because of some character flaw. This flaw, which is usually some common human flaw like greed or misplaced loyalty, causes the character to deteriorate and leads to his ultimate downfall.

In “Two Little Soldiers”, two friends, Jean and Luc, begin the story in a pastoral and fairly idyllic setting despite being far from home. Together, they enjoy their time together, eating a simple meal and enjoying a bit of wine before having to return to their duties.

This sense of camaraderie is ultimately destroyed by the introduction of a third party—a girl. Suddenly, the two friends are equally fascinated by this girl, and they begin to chat about her throughout their week. Neither soldier seems prepared to make a move for the girl’s affections at first, and then suddenly, Luc changes everything when he takes leave without telling Jean where he is going.

When the three meet again, everything has changed. Jean and Luc are no longer the central pair of the group; instead, Luc and the girl have clearly become more intimate during his evenings of leave. They sneak off together, leaving Jean completely isolated.

Luc was Jean’s central line of connection in a world of confinement and loneliness. Realizing that he has lost this connection, Jean is bewildered and desolate. He presumably commits suicide by intentionally falling into the river because of the fresh disconnect he feels from humanity.

Follow us on:



Luc is devastated by the loss of his friend, barely able to choke out the news when he returns to the barracks. Thus, the tragedy is dependent on Luc's character flaw: he prioritizes romantic possibilities over a close friendship. This ultimately causes the tragic loss of the friendship which he had valued so much and which had sustained him through the loneliness of being so far from home.

e. What is the setting and style of the story?

Answer: The story is set in the French countryside, near the town of Courbevoie. It is wartime, but the scene is peaceful and idyllic; Luc and Jean, who are soldiers stationed in barracks nearby, come here on Sundays for a quiet meal and to enjoy the area, which reminds them of home. The beauty of the setting is enhanced by the presence of a young village girl, who brings her cow out to pasture every Sunday when the boys are there. The boys begin to engage in "a bit of innocent ogling" of the comely girl, who after a while begins to talk to them.

f. How would you describe the conflict between the friends?

Answer: In the story the conflict arises when the girl kisses Luc passionately, without paying attention to Jean. Seeing this Jean is upset and heartbroken. Jean got the reason behind why Luc seeks leave and borrows money from Jean but offers no explanation for his behavior. Luc and the girl go to attend to the cow and disappear into the woods for a long time. When they return, the lovers kiss again, and the girl doesn't offer him any milk that day. Eventually, the conflict between friendship and love leads to death of Jean.

Reference beyond the text

a. Is it good to have conflict between friendship and love? Is it morally good that a person and his best friend can love the same person?

Answer: No, It is not good to have a conflict between friendship and love because these are the relationships which are extremely important for an individual. True friends and loved ones are always concerned about each other. They shed light on your qualities, both positive and bad, and improve self-esteem. Both friendship and

Follow us on:



AR Dinesh



puspas.com.np



Puspa Shrestha

love assists to relieve stress and suffering through laughing and good times. They will help you move forward.

As long as love and intension are pure towards the person, it is not morally bad for two-person having the same feelings for the third one. This type of condition may arise in a person's life either knowingly or unknowingly. Although it is not bad, but there is high possibilities for the problems to arise in the near future. So, the only solution is to talk with each other and solve the problem by controlling your emotions.

b. How would you describe the triangular love?

Answer: The triangular love is a relationship in which three people are each in love with at least one other person in the relationship. While it can refer to a polyamorous relationship between three people, (i.e. Person A loves Person B loves Person C loves Person A). The short story "Two Little Soldiers" has presented a triangular love where the deception of a friend has created an unfortunate incident for the next friend.

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

[English](#)

[Nepali](#)

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Literature

Unit 1.7 An Astrologer's Day (Short Stories)

Class 11 English Exercise

R.K. Narayan

Summary

The short story 'An Astrologer's Day' by R. K. Narayan is a thriller and suspense short story which deals with a single day in the life of an ordinary astrologer who shrewdly tries to dupe people and escape from his guilt. The story not only exposes the fake astrologer but also highlights the gullible and superstitious people who approach him. His day begins like any other day but the day ends with unexpected events. When he is about to wind up his business, he meets a rogue character, Guru Nayak who is a part of the past life of the astrologer. Towards the end, as readers, we receive a shock that Guru Nayak and the astrologer belong to the same native towns. They were once upon a time good friends and had a quarrel one day. The result was that both were into bad company and had a fight. The astrologer tried to kill Guru Nayak by attacking him with a knife and when Guru Nayak fainted, he threw him into a nearby well.

Fortunately, a passerby saved Guru Nayak. The astrologer left his native village forever and became an astrologer. Thus suddenly he confronts his past unexpectedly but smartly tackles the situation.

The surrounding darkness seems to offer a refuge to the astrologer. There is an unexpected twist in the tale with the arrival of Guru Nayak on the scene. Gradually the mystery that is hidden in the darkness is unveiled by his questions. Guru Nayak challenges the astrologer's knowledge. He refuses to go away without getting a satisfactory answer to his questions.

However, the astrologer who is at his wit's end now decides to face the situation. He displays accurate knowledge about Guru Nayak's past and is successful in convincing him. In answering the question

Follow us on:



of Guru Nayak, the astrologer has not only deceived him but also saved himself from his own fate. The author superbly evokes the atmosphere of suspense and irony in the story. The story reveals how appearances are often deceptive. It shows the witty astrologer's encounter and escape from his former enemy.

An Astrologer's Day- Complete Exercise

Understanding the text

Answer the following questions.

a. How does the astrologer's appearance help him attract customers? How does he help the customers satisfy their needs?

Answer: His eyes are assumed to have a prophetic light by his customers. He wears a saffron turban. He presents himself so perfectly that he is a point of attraction for all the people. He helps the customers satisfy their needs with his working analysis of their troubles like marriage, money etc.

b. How do you characterize the astrologer's attitude toward the stranger?

Answer: The astrologer sees the stranger before him and perceives him to be his possible customer.

c. What details does the astrologer give the stranger about his past?

Answer: The astrologer tells the stranger that he was stabbed by a knife and thrown into a well to die, and some people passing by saw him and saved from dying.

d. Why does he advise the stranger to go home immediately?

Answer: He advises the stranger to go home immediately to get rid of danger in his life.

e. What is your reaction to the conversation between the astrologer and his wife?

Answer: When the astrologer gets home, he tells his wife that in the past he thought he had killed a man. He was now happy to know that the man he helped today was not dead. It was a clever

Follow us on:

plot twist to throw in the man he thought he had killed, as a potential scam for him.

Reference to the context

a. Suspense is the feeling of anticipation you may have as you read. In this story, what details contributed to your feelings of suspense and surprise? Explain.

Answer: This story is a nice combination of suspense and surprise. Here the feeling of suspense is created about the personal and past life of the astrologer. The reader is told that he was not intended to be an astrologer. He left his village without any previous plan. The readers are also told that astrology is not his family business. This creates a curiosity in the mind of the reader about the reasons why he broke this ancestral cycle and was forced to leave his home all of a sudden. The sense of suspense continues with the astrologers encounter with the stranger. The astrologer catches a glimpse of the stranger's face in the flash of light created by the matchstick and immediately disagrees to accept the stranger's challenge. At the end of the story, the readers are surprised with revelation of the fact that the astrologer was the person who stabbed the stranger and left for dead when he was drunk during one of his days as youngster.

b. Analyze the conflicts in "An Astrologer's Day." Explain how the conflicts are resolved and what they reveal about the characters involved in the story.

Answer: In the story conflicts arises when a stranger appears as a client of the astrologer on the site to consult him. The astrologer is packing up his things and is ready to call him one day. The stranger challenges the astrologer to provide specific answers for his questions. As the stranger light his cheroot, he catches a glimpse of his face to tell the stranger something that will satisfy him. The stranger is surprised to be told about his past life by the astrologer and agrees to give up his search for his enemy who was declared to have been crushed under a lorry. The astrologer ensures a safe and secure life to himself here after.

Follow us on:

c. “All right. I will speak. But will you give me a rupee if what I say is convincing? Otherwise I will not open my mouth, and you may do what you like.”

i. Who is the speaker?

Answer: The astrologer is the speaker.

ii. Who is he speaking to?

Answer: He is speaking to Guru Nayak.

iii. What does the expression ‘open my mouth’ mean?

Answer: The expression “open your mouth” means conveying convincing information about the stranger.

d. Description helps readers visualize what is happening in a story. What details and techniques does the author use to describe the astrologer?

Answer: The astrologer is an impressive character. He is able to develop a new personality and survive in a densely populated urban environment by using his intelligence. The astrologer lives by his wits. Despite having no mystical knowledge he knows how to put on a show to attract passers-by. It is obvious that he must sit for long hours in order to collect enough to keep himself and his family alive from day to day. In addition to his intelligence, he is courageous and determined. When he is dealing with Guru Nayak and his life is in danger, he still insists on bargaining for money. He brings every single anna home to his wife so that she can buy food for the family. He is a devoted husband and father.

The story has the mode of third-person omniscience. The use of dialogue throughout the story serves the function of providing multiple points of view without changing the overall authority of the narrator. The story is set in the Town Hall Park, in the late evening.

e. Irony is a contrast between appearances and reality. What is ironic about Guru Nayak’s meeting with the astrologer?

Answer: The irony of the situation centers around the meeting of Guru Nayak’s meeting with the astrologer. He comes to the astrologer for help in finding and killing the man he is talking about. The man whom Guru Nayak is looking for is none other than

Follow us on:

the astrologer. He makes Guru Nayak wait and bargain for money. When he finally calls the stranger by his name and tells him about the incident that happened in the village, he has Guru Nayak in the palm of his hand.

f. How does the astrologer's manner of dress suit his character?

Answer: The main character here in this story is an astrologer. He wears a saffron turban. He presents himself so perfectly that he is a point of attraction for all the people. He helps the customers satisfy their needs with his working analysis of their troubles like marriage, money etc. Due to his dressing sense, many peoples are attracted toward him. His eyes are assumed to have a prophetic light by his customers and everyone thinks him as a wise astrologer.

Reference beyond the text

a. The astrologer attracts many customers in the street who are pleased and astonished by what he tells them. What does this tell you about the people of the town walking in the street?

Answer: The main character here in this story is an astrologer. His astrology business depends on his character and the way he look. Due to his dressing sense, many peoples are attracted toward him. His eyes are assumed to have a prophetic light by his customers. This tells us that the people of the town walking in the street are really fascinated and pleased with the astrologer and his looks due to which they take him as a wise astrologer.

b. Why do most people want to know their future? Do you think astrologers can really help them know their future?

Answer: Most people want to know their future because they are very curious about what is going to happen ahead in their life. They want to know their happiness, the problems ahead, and their safety. Yes, real astrologers with real astrological knowledge can help you see your future.

c. Is astrology a good practice of fortune telling or is it just a blind faith? Give reasons.

Answer: Yes, astrology is a good practice of fortune telling.

Follow us on:

Astrology is practiced in different life events. People believe a lot in astrology in Eastern cultures. People find the right solutions to their problems through astrology. Astrological prophecies are also proved to be correct in many cases.

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

English

Nepali

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Literature

Unit 2.1 Corona Says (Poems)

Class 11 English Exercise

Vishnu S. Rai

Summary

The poem “Corona Says” is written by a Nepali poet Vishnu S. Rai who was educated in India, Nepal and UK. He is a retired professor of TU who taught English Language Education. In this poem the poet has taught about a pandemic (Covid-19) which has its devastating impact on human life.

This poem is written about the current issue of the Corona world crisis and its devastating impact on human life. This is a subtle satire about human behavior and attitudes. This poem considers Covid-19 as a by-product of human treatment of nature.

The speaker asks man not to cry and curses him for the damage. He claimed that the irrational behavior of humans had invited him (corona) and he had no choice but to let people suffer and die. For speakers, the number of deaths caused by war is higher than that of a pandemic. The so-called superiority of man over other creatures is criticized in the poem.

The pandemic questions us about our indifference to the living organisms that fly in the sky, live in the oceans and crawl on land, and the trees that provide oxygen. These organisms are considered as slaves. As per our wish, we will either kill them or sell them.

The poem mentions the positive effects of the disease too. During the pandemic, the sky is clear without dust and smoke because there is no human activity. People feel like animals locked up in a zoo. The pandemic has allowed the earth to rest.

The speaker wants humans to know themselves at first even if they claim to have control over everything. He says people should realize that the earth is a common home for all creatures. The speaker

Follow us on:



raised us by saying that the disease can be eradicated, and at the same time reminded us that there are still many other diseases that we can suffer from. It warns us that if we continue our immoral activities, we may incur irreparable harm and our civilization may be in danger.

Corona Says – Complete Exercise

Understanding the text

Answer the following questions.

a. Who is the speaker in the poem?

Answer: The speaker in the poem is Corona.

b. Who claims that they are superior to all?

Answer: The humans of this modern world claim that they are superior to all.

c. Why has the speaker come to the Earth?

Answer: The speaker has come to Earth as a result of the abuse of nature by people.

d. What positive changes have occurred on Earth after the speaker's visit?

Answer: After the speaker's visit, the sky has been clean without dust and smoke. People have felt like caged animals do in a zoo. The disease has allowed the earth to have a little rest.

Reference to the context

a. What does the speaker mean when he says:

But have you ever counted

How many have died so far

Because of you and your wars?

Answer: In the given lines, the speaker blames that the human beings themselves are responsible for wars and loss of their lives.

Follow us on:

The consequences and effects caused by wars is more terrible than the pandemic has done. Wars are the result of disputes over resources and land, or of a government's will to increase its influence, power and authority. The parties or government involving in wars never think of the consequences people have to face. Millions of people have lost their lives and properties because of wars. Aftereffects of wars is also causing them to suffer physically and psychologically.

b. Explain the following:

I will depart one day.

But remember

There're many others like me.

They'll come too.

If you don't get rid of your inflated ego,

You'll be back to your cave time

That you endured

Long, long, long ago ...

Answer: In the given extract, the speaker warns us to terminate our egoistic behaviour. No matter who we are, we have to preserve the nature and shouldn't go against the law of nature. By saying the above line the poet awares us that the pandemic can be controlled but they may suffer from other fatal diseases due to their own behaviours, and finally they can be the cause of the extinction of human civilization.

c. What does the speaker mean in the following lines? Explain.

The earth is not your property alone –

It's as much ours as yours.

Answer: In the given lines, the speaker denotes that the earth is the common habitat of all the living creatures. All of them have an equal right to use the resources available on earth, to sustain their lives. But we human beings are ruling over others thinking ourselves as superior and depriving them of using resources. The speaker is worried about growing human pressure on natural world. They have controlled all the natural resources for their own benefits though the earth is the common home for all the living organisms. In the name of development and progress, humans are destroying the sources of food and habitats of other creatures. In this way, slowly and slowly entire ecosystem is being destroyed.

Follow us on:

Reference beyond the text

a. What human behaviours are responsible for suffering in people's lives?

Answer: The human behaviours are the main cause behind all these sufferings of the people. Due to human egos, their greediness and bad deeds, the present world is facing a lot of crisis. Many people have lost their lives during this critical period. Due to their selfish nature, the earth have faced numerous problems of diseases. Their so-called egos and wars have snatched the lives of many people. Hence, human beings themselves are responsible for suffering in people's lives.

b. How does an epidemic differ from a pandemic? Briefly explain the impact of Corona Virus on human life and environment.

Answer: An epidemic is a widespread disease that affects many people in a population whereas pandemic is a disease that affects a wide geographical area and a large proportion of the population. Epidemics occurs when an agent and susceptible hosts are present in adequate number and the agent can be effectively conveyed from a source to the susceptible hosts.

Coronavirus is one of the greatest threat of the twenty-first century. This disease has taken away the lives of numerous number of people. People in the world are panic-stricken and living their life in mental fear. Businesses are down and economic crisis is seen all over the world. Many peoples are jobless, homeless and due to the scarcity of food also many peoples are dying. But due to the impact of Corona Virus, environment is clean and pollution free than before. As peoples are caged inside their houses, many of the industries are closed and the numbers of vehicles on the road is also decreased. Due to this the environment is cleaner and fresher than before.

THE END

Follow us on:



AR Dinesh



puspas.com.np



Puspa Shrestha

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

[English](#)

[Nepali](#)

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Literature

Unit 2.2 A Red, Red Rose (Poems)

Class 11 English Exercise

Robert Burns

Summary

The poem “A Red, Red Rose” is a lyrical ballad which was composed by Scotland national poet Robert Burns. It describes the speaker’s deep love for his beloved and promises that his love will last longer than human life and even the planet itself remaining fresh and constant forever.

In this poem, the speaker describes his beloved with images that are beautiful, fresh, and charming as a flower that has just bloomed. The love is as sweet as a beautiful song played by a skilled musician. Meanwhile, it also represents a new relationship with all the freshness and the excitement but the relationship doesn’t need to be long-lasting. Then, however, the speaker goes on to emphasize how long this love will last. Here, the speaker uses three images to measure these feelings of love. According to him, it will last till the seas and oceans going dry, till the rocks melt and the earth has decayed. His love will endure until the end of human life.

In the final stanza, he concludes by saying goodbye to his beloved as if the speaker is planning to leave on a journey. His beloved doesn’t need to worry because the speaker promises to return even if the journey covers a very long distance or takes a very long time. With time, the beloved will likely be older, less youthful, and perhaps less beautiful but the speaker’s feelings for her will remain constant. Here, the speaker focuses on pure love or spiritual love that never fades with time whereas youth and beauty end with time and its temporary attraction.

A Red, Red Rose – Complete Exercise

Understanding the text

Follow us on:



Answer the following questions.

a. To which two things does the speaker compare his love in the first stanza?

Answer: The two things to which the speaker compares his love in the first stanza are red rose and melody (music).

b. What does the speaker promise in the second and third stanzas?

Answer: The speaker promises to love his beloved until the earthly seas have become dry, rocks have melted by the heat of the sun and human life has ended in the second and third stanzas.

c. What imagery does he use in his promise, and why do you think he uses such language?

Answer: He uses the imagery of dry seas, melted rocks, ended human life in the second and third stanza and an image of a long journey in the fourth stanza. I think he uses such language because his love is so deep and true for his beloved.

d. In the last stanza, what event is about to happen by mentioning the number of miles?

Answer: In the last stanza, the event of reconciliation is about to happen by mentioning the number of miles.

e. Which image in the poem do you find the most memorable or surprising and why?

Answer: The most memorable or surprising image I find in the poem is of the dry seas throughout the world, because the speaker's promise is managed in a very interesting way.

Reference to the context

a. What can you infer about the speaker's devotion to his beloved from the following lines?

And I will come again, my love, Tho' it were ten thousand mile!

Answer: This beautiful promising line has been taken from Robert Burns love poem 'A Red, Red Rose. We find this line at the end of the fourth stanza. Here, the speaker is in deep love with his

Follow us on:

beloved. He is making a promise with his beloved by saying that no matter how long the journey is he will return to her life.

b. What is the theme of the poem?

Answer: The overriding theme of “A Red, Red Rose” is the power of love. In this poem, the speaker wishes to emphasize not just the love he has for his beloved, but the strength of that love and its power to endure in the most trying of circumstances. The speaker is so deeply in love with his “bonnie lass”—or beautiful young woman—that he pledges his love to her from now until the seas run dry.

c. Paraphrase the whole poem into simple prose form.

Answer: The poem ‘A Red, Red Rose’ is the poem that describes the speaker’s deep love for his beloved and promises that this love will last longer than human life.

The beloved of the speaker is as beautiful as the red rose and as sweet as the music. He wants to express that he is in deep and pure love with his beloved. The poet will love her till the seas are dried and rocks are melted by the heat of the sun. He promises to meet her even if he has to walk ten thousand mile. He expresses his true love and deep feeling towards his beloved.

d. Literary devices are tools that enable the writers to present their ideas, emotions, and feelings and also help the readers understand those more profound meanings. Analyze the poem in terms of the literary devices such as simile, symbolism, imagery, alliteration, and assonance.

Answer: The poet employs several literary devices like simile, symbolism, imagery, alliteration, and assonance to show the beauty of his beloved and the power of his love.

The first literary tool used in the poem is simile. It is an expression which is used to compare an object or a person with something else to make its meaning clear to the readers. There are two similes used in this poem. They are used when the speaker compares his beloved with a red rose and sweet melody.

Follow us on:

Symbolism is another literary device which is used to signify ideas and qualities giving them symbolic meaning. Here the poet has used 'rose' as a symbol of love.

Imagery is a distinct representation of something that can be understood through five senses. Robert has used visual imagery in the poem such as a red rose. There is a visual picture of a red rose in our mind when the speaker compares his beloved with a red rose. When he equates her to the sweet melody, auditory imagery is used. To convey the intensity of his affection, he then switches to hyperbolic images, by expressing that he will love her until the seas become dry and the rocks melt in the sun. We can view the world of dry seas and melted rocks in our mind.

Alliteration is the repetition of consonant sounds in the same line such as /l/ and /r/ in "O my Love is Like a red, red rose."

Assonance is a literary device in which the repetition of vowel sounds occurs in the same line. In the line 'And I will love thee still, my dear', the vowel sound /i/ is repeated.

e. What is hyperbole? Explain its purpose citing examples of hyperbole used in the poem.

Answer: Hyperbole is a literary technique which is used to exaggerate a statement for the sake of emphasis. The poet has used hyperbola in the last line of the second stanza, "Till a' the seas gang dry". He says that his love will flow even when the seas dry up. The second one is in the third stanza where the speaker claimed, "And the rocks melt wi' the sun". Here, the speaker seems to be exaggerating his emotions in these lines to illustrate his desire to love her forever.

f. What is refrain? Why is it used in the poem? Explain citing an example from the poem.

Answer: Refrain is a poetic device in poetry that focuses only on repeated lines at a certain distance. It is used to reinforce the main theme on point of a poem. It is also used to emphasize something and to produce rhythm in the poem as well. We find a refrain here in this poem in the second, third, and fourth stanzas and they are as follows:

- And I will love thee still, my dear

Follow us on:

- Till a' the seas gang dry
- And fare thee weel

Reference beyond the text

a. What kind of love is expressed in “A Red, Red Rose”?

Answer: In this poem, A Red, Red Rose, the poet has expressed his romantic and inestimable love for his beloved. He promises to love his beloved until the earthly seas have become dry, rocks have melted by the heat of the sun and human life has ended and makes it clear that he will love her till his last breath.

b. Do you think that love has power? Why do the poets compose poems addressing their beloved?

Answer: Yes, I think that love has power. In fact I consider love as a most powerful thing that exists in the entire universe. Love is the thing that bounds people and keep them together. Love can sometimes lead people towards perfection whereas it may bring destructive results too. Most of the poets compose their poems addressing their beloved because poem is the beautiful and best medium to express the feeling of a person. Expressing love in poem adds more beauty to the story than in another form. Thus the poets compose poems addressing their beloved.

c. Poetry is the expression of feeling and emotions. Explain.

Answer: Most of the literary works of extraordinary merit have been written through the means of poetry. Poetry is the representation of thoughts and feelings that enables people to express themselves in writing. Poetry is a perfect way to express love, emotions, imagination, and exchange ideas and thoughts with others. Poetry holds power to explain those intimate moments of the life of human beings. It's not only a joy that poets can relate to their verses, but also grief, despair, grief, pain, doubt, hatred, love, compassion, desire, praise, faith, respect, and hope. Therefore, poetry can be taken as the expression of feelings and emotions.

THE END

Follow us on:



If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

[English](#)

[Nepali](#)

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Literature

Unit 2.3 All the World's a Stage (Poems)

Class 11 English Exercise

William Shakespeare

Summary

The poem (sonnet -14th line poem) of Shakespeare is taken from his famous play “As you like it”. It describes the seven stages of human life and the seven acts of play which shows Shakespeare’s deep knowledge and transience of human life. The seven-stage of human life are as mentioned below.

1. Infant /Crying Stage: Our entrance is our birth and exit is our death. During a lifetime, each one of us must play many parts and each part is compared to an act of play. It is the stage of an infant who cries, vomits milk in the nurse’s arm.
2. The second is his boyhood or his period of going to school. It is the time when he complains all the time and starts with a fresh morning but is not willing to go to school because he is so much attached to his mother and the outer world is new and strange for him.
3. The third stage presents the youth of every man or a lover who is lost in his thought of love. The lover writes poetry about his lady’s beauty. The man adventures to love and romance in this age and composes poetry in praise of his lover.
4. The fourth stage describes a soldier who believes in competition, winning name and fame, how difficult and it may be. Because of their short-tempered, competitive, and aggressive nature, he may pick up a quarrel with anybody at any time by risking their life.
5. The fifth stage now shows maturity and wisdom with family life and represents a good judge. He leaves his anger and aggressive behavior. He changed into a fearful and healthy man carrying full of wisdom.

Follow us on:



AR Dinesh



puspas.com.np



Puspa Shrestha

6. The sixth stage generally represents the older aged people who seem to be in pantaloon and with spectacles. His commanding voice has grown weak.

7. This is the last and strange stage of human life which has been occupied with four strange events that come to an end. In this stage, man becomes childish by nature. He forgets almost everything, memory became weak. He loses teeth, eyesight, and taste as well. It is the stage in which he completes the drama of his life and leaves the stage of the world for the next generation.

All The World is a Stage – Complete Exercise

Understanding the text

Answer the following questions.

a. Why does the poet compare the world with a stage?

Answer: The poet compares the world to a stage because he considers all men and women like the actors performing their different roles here in this stage. By stage he means the world.

b. What is the first stage in a human's life? In what sense can it be a troubling stage?

Answer: The first stage in a human's life is childhood. It can be a troubling stage in the sense that this stage is a fully dependent stage and the infant can cry and even vomit anytime in mother's arms.

c. Describe the second stage of life based on the poem.

Answer: The second stage of life is the stage of boyhood. In this stage, the boy is a school going student. He complains all the time. His face is like shining morning. He carries his bag and reluctantly goes to school as slowly as a snail.

d. Why is the last stage called second childhood?

Answer: The last stage is called second childhood because in this stage the man loses his senses of sight, hearing, smell and taste and behaves as like a child.

Follow us on:

e. In what sense are we the players in the world stage?

Answer: We are the players in the world stage as we appear on the world stage when we get birth and leave it when we die like the actors do on the stage in a theater.

Reference to the context

a. Explain the following lines:

All the world's a stage,

And all the men and women merely players

Answer: In the given lines, the poet has compared the whole world with a stage where men and women are the actors. After birth, every person perform their roles here in this worldly stage and finally, leave this stage moving towards their final destination called death.

b. Explain the following lines briefly with Reference to the context.

They have their exits and their entrances;

And one man in his time plays many parts,

Answer: The given lines are taken from the poem 'All the world's a stage', composed by William Shakespeare. These lines express similarity between the roles the actors play on the stage and humans in their lives.

Here, the poet has said that the people arrive here in this worldly stage through birth and leave this stage through death. Like the actors in a drama, we are assigned various roles to be performed. When we get our roles completed we quit the stage of our life. The poet wants us to realize the fact that human life is like the stage of a theatre. A man is fated to act several roles in his life.

c. Read the given lines and answer the questions that follow.

Then the whining schoolboy, with his satchel

And shining morning face, creeping like snail

Unwillingly to school.

i. Which stage of life is being referred to here by the poet?

Answer: The childhood stage of life is being referred to here by the poet.

Follow us on:



AR Dinesh



puspas.com.np



Puspa Shrestha

ii. Which figure of speech has been employed in the second line?

Answer: In the second line, simile, a figure of speech has been employed where the boy has been compared with snail using like.

iii. Who is compared to the snail?

Answer: The school-going boy is compared to the snail.

iv. Does the boy go to the school willingly?

Answer: No, the boy doesn't go to the school willingly. His unwillingness can easily be the motion of snail towards his school.

d. Simile and metaphor are the two major poetic devices used in this poem. Explain citing examples of each.

Answer: Here in this poem, we find major poetic devices as simile and metaphor. The poet has used these poetic devices a lot. The examples of simile and metaphor of this poem are as follows:

- a) "All the world's a stage" – Metaphor
- b) "And all the men and women merely players" – Metaphor
- c) "And shining morning face, creeping like a snail" – Simile
- d) "Full of strange oaths, and bearded like the pard," – Simile
- e) "Seeking the bubble reputation" – Metaphor
- f) "His youthful hose, well saved, a world too wide" – Metaphor.
- g) "and his big manly voice, Turning again toward childish treble" – Metaphor.

e. Which style does the poet use to express his emotions about how he thinks that the world is a stage and all the people living in it are mere players?

Answer: The poem is written in blank verse with regular metrical but unrhymed lines. The style of the poem is narrative. In this poem he has expressed his innermost emotions about how he thinks that the world is a stage and all the people living in it are mere players or characters. These characters go through seven different phases in their lives. He has explained the real aspects of human life for all readers to understand the reality of life.

f. What is the theme of this poem?

Answer: In 'All the world's a stage' Shakespeare discusses the futility of humanity's place in the world. He explores themes of time, aging, memory, and the purpose of life. Through the

Follow us on:

monologue's central conceit, that everyone is simply a player in a larger game that they have no control over, he brings the themes together. Shakespeare takes the reader through the stages of life, starting with infancy and childhood and ending up with an old man who's been a lover, a soldier, and a judge. The "man" dies after reverting back to a state that's close to childhood and infancy.

Reference beyond the text

a. Describe the various stages of human life picturised in the poem "All the world's a stage."

Answer: According to Shakespeare, the world is a stage and everyone is a player. He says that every man has seven stages during his lifetime. The first stage of a man is childhood. He plays in the arms of his mother. He often vomits and cries in this stage. In his second stage, the man is an unwilling school going student. He becomes a lover in his third stage. He is very busy composing ballads for his beloved and yearns for her attention. In the fourth stage, he is aggressive and ambitious. He seeks reputation in all that he does. He is ready to guard his country and becomes a soldier. In his fifth stage, he becomes a fair judge with maturity and wisdom. In the sixth stage, he is seen with loose pantaloons and spectacles. His manly voice changes into a childish treble. The last stage of all is his second childhood. Slowly, he loses his faculties of sight, hearing, smell and taste and exits from the roles of his life. Thus, Shakespeare has presented the pictures of the seven stages of a man's life in the poem 'All the World's a Stage.'

b. Is Shakespeare's comparison of human's life with a drama stage apt? How?

Answer: Shakespeare has compared human life to a play or drama played by every man and woman. He has described seven stages of life, which are like the seven acts of a play.

The comparison of the world to a stage and people to actors goes before Shakespeare. We find such comparisons made in many philosophical books too.

Follow us on:

But, even if nobody had written about it, it is by a simple observation of life around us we find the same thing happening. Everybody takes birth, grows, and with every growth, man's life changes. He works, fulfils duties and responsibilities according to age, and finally leaves the world.

This simple observation tells us Shakespeare's comparison of human life with a drama is very apt.

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

English

Nepali

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Literature

Unit 2.4 Who are you, little i? (Poems)

Class 11 English Exercise

E.E. Cummings

Theme

In terms of the central idea, this frame presents the close connection between nature and childhood. A child is very close to nature but as he grows up this connection is disturbed. A child is capable of perceiving beauty and astonishment in the world of nature. In terms of the context, the speaker remembers his childhood days when he as a child looked at the setting sun in November through the window.

In terms of rhyme scheme, we have abided in other words the first line rhymes with third-line second rhymes with the fourth line, and so on.

Main Summary

Here, the poem begins with the poet's question who are you, little i? He is not in fact asking a question but remembering his childhood days. We also notice parenthesis in the second and sixth lines which is another characteristic of Cummings' poetry. The first five lines resemble the poet's childish days. He remembers his childish days when he was five or six and sitting nearby the window and looking at the sunset. Here the poet has used of small letter 'i' for two purposes, first of all, he has used small 'i' for self-reflection or referring to himself as a child, and secondly, it shows the image of the poet indicated by the second line. He also used the semicolon between wind and at in the fourths line to suggest two different locations as inside and outside the window such as boy is inside the window and sun is setting outside it. Finally, the poem concludes with the statement that if the day has to become night this is a

Follow us on:

beautiful way and it also reflects the child's excitement at the transformation of the day into night.

Therefore, for him, this is something beautiful. It can also be interpreted as the poet's desire to see the end of his life where the days refer to life and night refer to death.

Exercise: Question Answer Solutions

Understanding the text

Answer the following questions.

a. Who can be the speaker of this poem?

Answer: The speaker of this poem is the poet himself. Here in this poem, he has presented himself as a little boy recalling his childhood experience connected with nature.

b. What is "little i" doing?

Answer: 'Little i' is looking the beautiful and golden scene of sunset from a window and feeling about the beautiful way of transforming the day into the night.

c. What can be the relationship between "little i" and the speaker of the poem?

Answer: The "little i" is the childhood of the speaker himself, and the speaker is the child grown-up. So we can say that the "little i" is the child version of the speaker.

d. What is the speaker remembering from his childhood days in the poem?

Answer: The speaker is remembering an extremely beautiful scene of nature from his childhood days in the poem. He is remembering himself as a little boy who used to enjoy the beautiful golden sunset and its transformation.

e. What attitude does the speaker seem to have toward the child in the poem?

Answer: The speaker seems to have a positive, nostalgic attitude

Follow us on:

towards the child. He feels a youthful presence in himself still now, who inspires him now to look out and enjoy the nature outside.

Reference to the context

a. Why do you think Cummings has placed a semicolon between the words window and at?

Answer: I think Cummings has placed a semicolon between the words window to provide a break in the long sentence while keeping the thought flowing. In such situations a semicolon works stronger than a comma as in the present sentence structure.

b. If the speaker is the child grown up, why does he ask, “who are you”?

Answer: There is no doubt that the speaker is the child grown up. Still he puts the question “who are you”. It may be because he is struggling to recall the wonderment of his youthful days. Or maybe, it’s his incredulity that there is still a youthful presence in himself enjoying the nature.

c. In this poem, an adult reflects on the childhood experience.

Based on that, what might be the theme of the lines:

“(and feeling: that if day / has to become night / this is a beautiful way)”?

Answer: Here, in these lines, we find the boy’s feeling about the beautiful scene of November’s golden sunset. He feels about wonderful transition of nature i.e day to night. Thus, the theme of these lines might refer to death. It is a touchy way to describe an unwelcome transition from the joyful youth to the end of life.

d. What is the rhyme scheme used in the poem?

Answer: A rhyme scheme is the pattern of sounds that repeats at the end of a line or stanza. The rhyme scheme used in the poem is ABAB and CDCD.

e. Explain the pun in “little i” that is related to what he is doing.

Answer: A pun is the clever use of a word that has more than one meaning or a word that have different meanings but sounds the same. The pun in ‘little i’ indicates both a specific aspect of the

Follow us on:

poet's personality, the childlike feeling of wonder, and seeing the world through the 'eye' of a child.

f. How does Cummings's use of lowercase letters affect your understanding of the poem? Explain.

Answer: Cummings's use of lowercase letters affect my understanding of the poem. He uses lowercase letters to emphasize his inferior feelings in regard to his experience. He used to enjoy nature in his childhood full of happiness but now his adulthood worries have suppressed his joys and pleasures.

Reference beyond the text

a. How does nature inspire the speaker in "who are you, little i"? Explain.

Answer: Nature inspires the speaker a lot in "who are you, little i". The beauty of nature has made him to go back into his beautiful childhood experience. He finds himself as a little boy of five or six years old in his childhood. He used to look at the beautiful golden sunset and feels for the beautiful way of the transition of the day into the night.

b. Recall a childhood moment when you felt closely connected with nature. Describe the time and place as well as your feelings and thoughts about it.

Answer: I was born and raised in the busy city of Kathmandu. My father works there. I grew up in the midst of the city, with little connection to nature. As I was about to take my school graduation exams my father announced that we would go to our native village in the long vacation. My happiness knew no bound. It was like a dream coming true. Finally I was in my native village. It was so different. Opposite to the hustle and bustle of the busy city, it was so calm and tranquil. It was first time I saw a milking cow. Otherwise I used to think that all produce come from super markets or dairies. The next morning my grand pa took me to our paddy field. I was surprised to see the vast stretch of greenery. It was so different from the concrete jungle of the place where I live. The chirping of birds in mango groves was so sweet. It was not like a

Follow us on:

caged bird. I never knew before that winds can play so delightfully. There I learnt how to connect with nature. I enjoyed sun rises and sunsets, which were always covered by the big buildings of my city. We stayed there for about a month. But I shall never forget my first introduction with nature.

c. Interpret the poem in any way you like.

Answer: This little poem is in the form of a dramatic monologue where he addresses his own childhood. It opens with in a nostalgic mood. Watching sunset through his window one evening, the speaker suddenly goes in flashback when in his childhood he used to enjoy such natural scenes.

He asks his “little i” who he is. No doubt, the ‘little i’ is his childhood version (his childhood). It shows that although the worries of his childhood have kept suppressed his childhood pleasures, it is still there in some corner of his heart. That is the happiest thing.

As the poem proceeds, the mood changes from nostalgic to sad pensive one, when he talks about the the passing days, indicating ‘death’. Here we find an unwelcome transition (change) from pleasing childhood to approaching death. But here again, he finds a beautiful way of approaching a dreaded finale (that is, fear of death).

By putting “i” with “little” he deemphasizes (minimizes the importance of) the self and promotes time.

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Follow us on:



Puspa Shrestha

Best Quality Resource Site for Class 11 And 12 Students
(Based on Updated Curriculum 2077)

Page | 201

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

English

Nepali

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Literature

Unit 2.5 The Gift in Wartime (Poems)

Class 11 English Exercise

Tran Mong Tu

Theme

In terms of the central idea, this frame presents the close connection between nature and childhood. A child is very close to nature but as he grows up this connection is disturbed. A child is capable of perceiving beauty and astonishment in the world of nature. In terms of the context, the speaker remembers his childhood days when he as a child looked at the setting sun in November through the window.

In terms of rhyme scheme, we have abided in other words the first line rhymes with third-line second rhymes with the fourth line, and so on.

About Poetress

Name: Tran Mong Tu

Nationality: Vietnamese

Birth: 19 December 1943

Birthplace: North Vietnam

Theme

The poem has the theme of lamentation for the loss and meaninglessness of lives lost in war. She has presented the very bad impact of war on humans. She has shown her grief, loneliness, and terrible picture of war which snatched all her happiness of life.

Main Summary

The poet has used a very satirical title for those who give more importance to the power and demands for war rather than their lives. This poem presents a

Follow us on:



very clear vision of suffering and lamentation for the loss. Here, the speaker is a widow and through her character, she presents the painful feelings of her lonely life. So she wants to relay the message that war never provides happiness it provides gifts as death, blood, pain, suffering, loss, etc. The poet has presented this poem in seven stanzas.

First Stanza

In the first stanza, the speaker is offering roses to be buried in a new grave of her husband who recently died in the war. She also offers her wedding gown to cover the tomb which is still green with grass. Here, the speaker relates this stanza with her deep love and her feelings for her husband.

Second Stanza

In the second stanza, she talks about his bravery. Her husband was awarded the medals with the silver stars and yellow pips on the badge are still shining with the pride of his bravery. But now these awards are of no use and it is meaningless with his death.

Third Stanza

In the third stanza, she remembers her youth days where she offered her youth to him as a wife. They were in deep love but with the bad news of her husband's death, the youth and her love life also end at her young age.

Fourth Stanza

The fourth stanza is related to the war zone where many soldiers died and for her, the dress of war only provides her with blood in return. War only brings a bad result for humans. It brings sorrow, pain, suffering, death, etc.

Fifth Stanza

In the fifth stanza, she presents her grief. She remembers her lovable person. with his death, her springtime of life has become cold, her eyes are filled with tears as the clouds in summer. She presents her deep sorrow.

Sixth Stanza

In the sixth stanza, she presents the effects and her pitiable condition. Now her lovable person has left her lips without a smile, arms without tenderness, eyes without sight, and the body without motion.

Seventh Stanza

Follow us on:



So in the final stanza, she promises to meet him again in their next life and they can recognize each other by the shrapnel which indicates the picture of war and the causes of death.

Conclusion

So this poem presents the inhumanity and cruelty of war and its negative impact over a human with their dark future.

The Gift in Wartime – Complete Exercise

Understanding the text

Answer the following questions.

a. Who is the speaker addressing and why can that person not hear or understand what she is saying?

Answer: The speaker is addressing her husband. He cannot hear or understand what she is saying because he is dead.

b. What can you infer about the speaker's feelings for the person addressed as "you"?

Answer: Her feelings for that person she addresses as "you" is full of love, affection and devotion. She has gifted him all the pleasures of life. She is saddened by his demise. Although he is no more in the world, she is still hopeful to meet him in their next life.

c. What is the speaker's attitude toward war?

Answer: The speaker has bitter attitude towards war as she has lost her husband.

d. In what ways do you think this person's fate has affected the speaker?

Answer: This person's fate was to die in war because he was a soldier. The speaker's happiness and youth ended with his death. Thus, the ill-fate of the person has made her helpless, loveless and miserable.

e. What does the speaker promise at the end of the poem? Why do you think the speaker does this?

Answer: At the end of the poem, the speaker promises to meet her lovable person in their next life. She wants to take shrapnel as a proof to show him the reason behind his death and their separation. I think the speaker does this because of her love for the absent person is so deep and she wants to be in love with him again and again.

Follow us on:

Reference to the context

a. What is the theme of the poem?

Answer: The theme of the poem is the cruelty and inhumanity of the war and its negative impacts over humans. The poem talks about the tragedy caused by war. One life ends but many others are affected. After the untimely death of the soldier, his family and dear ones will suffer. Life is priceless, so there is no compensation for this great loss.

b. What imagery from the poem made the greatest impression on you? Why?

Answer: The poet has used several powerful images in this poem. Among them all, I liked the shrapnel image the most. It made it very clear what gift a war can give to human beings. The shrapnel does not only mean that it shattered the body of the soldier, but also shattered the life of the beloved. That is the deadly gift of the war.

c. Which figurative language is used in the poem? Explain with examples.

Answer: Figurative language is phrasing that goes beyond the literal meaning of words to get a message. We find the use of irony, apostrophe, anaphora, and metaphor as the figurative language here in this poem. Irony takes place when the poet talks about the gift which is not a real gift but of grief and loss. A grave and shrapnel as tokens of remembrance are the examples of it.

The poet uses imagery when roses are offered in her beloved's grave, and her husband is described as a corpse with lips with no smile and eyes with no sight. The red roses traditionally symbolize love.

The next figure of speech is anaphora, which is the repetition of the same words at the beginning of a line. In the first, third and fifth stanzas, the poet repeats "I offer you" and coming to the sixth stanza where the speaker repeats "you give me" three times in a row. These are the examples of anaphora used in this poem.

The poem also utilizes the apostrophe literary technique that is addressed directly to a non-present person or an inanimate object. Like in the poem, the speaker confronts the dead corpse of her spouse.

d. What does the speaker "offer" in this poem? What does the person addressed as "you" give in return?

Answer: The speaker offers various things like roses, her wedding gown, her youth, clouds, cold winters etc. to her lovable person. The person addressed as "you" gives her the medals with shining stars, badge with yellow pips, the smell of blood from wardress, lips without a smile, arms without tenderness, eyes without sight, and body without motion.

Follow us on:

e. An apostrophe is a literary device in which a writer or speaker addresses an absent person or an abstract idea in such a way as if it were present and can understand. Discuss the poem in relation to apostrophe.

Answer: An apostrophe is a literary device in which a writer or speaker addresses an absent person or an abstract idea in such a way as if it were present and can understand. Here in the poem, we can see the use of an apostrophe when the speaker addresses the dead body as if he can understand her. She offers him red roses and her wedding gown at his grave. Her youth has ended with his death. His badge, bravery medals and the blood from his dress make her sad. Her eyes are full like summer clouds and her life has changed from spring to winter. She wants to prove her deep love and respect for her husband by showing her sacrifice. Thus, this poem has shown the bitterness of war on behalf of the speaker using the apostrophe.

Reference beyond the text

a. One way to get relief from grief is to write or talk about it. In your opinion, how might the speaker in this poem have benefitted from saying what she did? Explain.

Answer: One way to get relief from grief is to write or talk about it. Grief is caused by loss. In emotional situation a person can get relief by talking with dear one. We can share our pain to other by writing poem, stories, etc. or sharing our experiences with other. The speaker in this poem has also chosen the same path. She has become able to reduce her pain and suffering by talking with her dead husband.

Happiness and pain are an inevitable part of human life. In our life, we must experience both sides of life. We must find a way to cope with the grief and move on with our life. The speaker is talking to her husband who was killed in war. She offers him red roses and her wedding gown at his grave. Her youth has ended with his death. His badge, bravery medals and the blood from his dress make her sad. Her eyes are full like summer clouds. Her life is changed from spring to winter. She wants to prove her deep love and respect for her husband by showing her sacrifice. In this way, the speaker becomes able to cope with her deep pain by talking with her dead husband.

b. Write an essay on the effects of war.

Answer:

Effects of War

The effects of war are widely spread and can be long term or short term. Soldiers experience war differently than civilians, although either suffer in times of war, and women and children suffer unspeakable atrocities in

Follow us on:



particular. In the past decade, up to two million of those killed in armed conflicts were children. The widespread trauma caused by these atrocities and suffering of the civilian population is another legacy of these conflicts, the following creates extensive emotional and psychological stress. Present-day internal wars generally take a larger toll on civilians than state wars. This is due to the increasing trend where combatants have made targeting civilians a strategic objective. A state conflict is an armed conflict that occurs with the use of armed force between two parties, of which one is the government of a state. “The three problems posed by intra-state conflict are the willingness of UN members, particularly the strongest member, to intervene; the structural ability of the UN to respond; and whether the traditional principles of peacekeeping should be applied to intra-state conflict”. Effects of war also include mass destruction of cities and have long lasting effects on a country’s economy. Armed conflict has important indirect negative consequences on infrastructure, public health provision, and social order. These indirect consequences are often overlooked and unappreciated.

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

[English](#)

[Nepali](#)

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Literature

Unit 3.1 Sharing Tradition (Essays)

Class 11 English Exercise

Frank LaPena

Understanding the text

Answer the following questions.

a. According to LaPena, what is the importance of the oral tradition? To what extent do you agree with his opinions and why?

Answer: Frank Lapena, the writer of this essay give more importance in the oral tradition. According to him, the tradition followed by our elders must be passed from generation to generation orally. It helps to maintain our cultural resource.

Yes, I agree with his opinion because oral tradition helps the young generation to know about the lifestyle. Social, cultural environment of our elders in the past moreover, they can know about their family history. Our culture is our identity simply oral tradition helps people to preserve their identity.

b. Who preserve and pass on the oral tradition?

Answer: Oral tradition is a form of human communication in which knowledge, culture, traditions, ideas etc. are transmitted orally from one generation to another generation. Its duty of every to preserve and promote to pass on their tradition because they are experienced one.

c. What is the danger of not passing on information from generation to generation?

Answer: If the information from one generation to generation is not passed then there will not be perseverance of cultural environment i.e. following festivals, religion etc. our identity and values will be no more left.

d. What is the difference between oral tradition and literary tradition?

Follow us on:

Answer: The difference between oral tradition and literary tradition is that in an oral tradition information related to culture and values are transmitted from generation to generation through oral means whereas in literary tradition information is transmitted through written means.

e. How does LaPena establish a relationship between art and the oral tradition?

Answer: Both art and the oral tradition are the form of communication in which the author or story teller tries to convey a message to the listener/reader. LaPena presents the oral tradition as the source of our inspiration for art. He says that the oral tradition has an impact on how one visualizes the stories, the characters, the designs and color for art.

Reference to the context

a. LaPena states that the oral tradition helps maintain the values of a culture. If you believe that the oral tradition is important, how would you maintain it?

Answer: It is true that oral tradition helps maintain the values of a culture. I would maintain oral tradition in the following ways:-

i) I would save the original tape as well as the transcript of the interview that were given by old peoples.

ii) I would pay much more attention to the things that the elders are willing to share with us.

iii) I may start a project on preserverance of our oral tradition.

iv) I would perform different street dramas about our oral tradition.

v) In my old age I would try to share my views and ideas that I know about oral tradition. I would like to share it with the next generation.

b. “Not everyone is capable of fulfilling the roles of the elders.”

Explain this statement with reference to the essay.

Answer: Yes, obviously not everyone is capable of fulfilling the rules of elders. Elders are the old aged persons. On the one hand everyone who lives long enough automatically becomes an elder.

Follow us on:

According, to my view of point to be an elder one should live for long years. And to fulfill the roles of elders, the elders should have better views, knowledge about the past traditions. We know that all the elders are not of same type. Some may have followed their traditions from their young age and some may not have followed their traditions from their young age which means the one who has not followed traditions from their young age, they do not know much more about the tradition.

So, to fulfill the responsibilities of the elders, the elders should be specialized, they should have to know much more things about past tradition. So, they could pass to us. If they don't know anything about the tradition than they pass us the knowledge, views and ideas. Hence, "not everyone is capable of fulfilling the rules of elders."

c. What is the controlling idea or thesis of this essay?

Answer: The controlling ideas or thesis of this essay is to preserve and protect our tradition. Whatever our tradition are that we follow always should be preserve. The persons of next to next generation should also follow their tradition, they should be well known about the tradition that we are following and the same type of tradition they should also follow. Coming to present generation, many people does not know some traditions, they already forget and some traditions have already been disappear and stopped. So, to preserve and protect our tradition this essay is written.

d. How do topic sentences guide the reader through the essay?

What would be lost without them?

Answer: The topic sentence relates to the thesis, or main point of the essay guides the reader by signposting what the paragraph is about. All the sentences in the rest of the paragraph should relate to the topic sentence. An effective topic sentence combines a main idea with the writer's personal attitude or opinion. It serves to orient the reader and provides an indication of what will follow in the rest of paragraph. If there is no topic sentences then the main point of a paragraph can't be expressed and hence the reader can understand the main thesis or controlling idea of paragraph.

Follow us on:



e. What are the four major problems developed by LaPena with regard to maintaining the oral tradition. How are they used to structure the essay?

Answer: The four major problems developed by LaPena with regard to maintaining the oral tradition are as follows:

- Some of the elders have played ideal and special roles in preserving the values. And it is hard to fill their places.
- The youngsters do not show enough interest in listening to and asking the elders.
- It is hard to maintain traditions in changing times when new technologies destroy old values.
- There is no authentic sharing between the generations. Modern research may not collect true data about the oral contents of tradition. Once wrong information is published, correction is difficult.

Reference beyond the text

a. Write a paragraph or two explaining your attitude toward the oral tradition of passing along information.

Answer: Oral tradition is one of the effective practices for all the people of this world to maintain and preserve the culture and values of tradition. It is also an art form as it takes its subject matters from our tradition. There is an important role of both the elders and young people perform their vital roles in maintaining and preserving the culture and values of tradition through passing authentic information from generation to generation.

I believe that it helps to share and transmit ancestors' culture, skill and knowledge to next generation. Next generation gets a chance to know past culture and tradition. They will understand that our culture is our true identity. So my attitude towards the oral tradition is positive. I believe that if we lose our culture, we will lose our identity and existence. We will suffer from the problem of identity crisis. Our culture and tradition are a living experience. Without it, we will lose our true identity. So, we must preserve, follow and transmit it from one generation to next to save its existence.

Follow us on:

b. Our culture is our identity. Write a few paragraphs explaining how you intend to preserve your culture, values and norms.

Answer: Yes, it is true that our culture is our identity. Cultural traditions and perspectives have shaped who we are. The way we are determined to our cultural values, reveals who we are. If we lose our culture, we will lose our identity and existence. So its our duty to preserve our culture, values and norms.

I intend to preserve my culture, values and norms doing the following activities:

1. Celebrating every ceremony related to my culture.
2. Making people aware of the importance of our culture, values and norms.
3. Promoting cultural and traditional events in my community.
4. Forming an organization related to cultural heritage.
5. Sharing information related to the culture and values of my tradition.

In conclusion, cultural preservation is vital. It preserves a sense of unity and belonging among people of a specific community. So, the forefathers passed much cultural heritage to the new generation. Cultural preservation's future is at risk. Because of today's busy lifestyles and intense social responsibilities. Preservation of cultural heritage requires the protection of our cultural heritage. Above all, sharing your cultural heritage is the best way to preserve it. Future generations can live according to their ancestor's values by preserving cultural heritage. Cultural heritage is a constitutional right that the constitution should protect.

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Follow us on:



Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

English

Nepali

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Literature

Unit 3.2 How to Live Before You Die (Essays)

Class 11 English Exercise

Steve Jobs

Summary

This essay, “How to Live Before You Die” is a motivational speech which has been delivered by the CEO and co-founder of Apple Computer and Pixar, Steve Jobs on 12th June 2005. This speech encourages not only the students of Stanford University but also the many people around the world. Here, in this speech, Steve Jobs relates three different stories based on his life which played a very vital role in shaping the experiences and journey of a successful career.

First story: Connecting the dots

The first part of Steve Jobs’ speech is about connecting the dots. Here, in this first story, he has narrated about his birth, adoption scene, and later struggle when he was young, he feels to make meaning of his life. He felt different experiences but started to make sense in the end. So, connecting dots is related to connecting life experiences to get the meaning of it. According to him, his biological mother was an unwed college graduate student who decided to put him for adoption before his birth so later he was adopted by the parents who were under graduated but persuaded his biological mother to sent him to college someday.

Steve joined an expensive college named Reed College at the age of 17 but later he dropped out in Reed College because he was not interested in the normal class. He was fascinated by beautiful posters and wanted to join Calligraphy instructions. So, he decided to join Calligraphy instruction in Reed College but after 10 years he used his knowledge of calligraphy as his skill when he was designing his first Macintosh computer. He designed the first computer with beautiful typography and later on his hardship

Follow us on:

turned out to be priceless. By looking back, he got the idea that how different dots kept on connecting themselves and support him to reach his real destination. His decision of dropping college, starting his course of interest, his experiences, hardship, trust in Karma, etc. moved along with his steps like different dots and made him successful.

Second Story: Love and Loss

The second story is about love and loss. Here, in this part, he has narrated his story related to the love and passion for his work and the loss of his company. As being successful at his early age, he and his friend Woz started the Apple Company in his parent's garage. They worked hard and in 10 years period, the small company turned into 2 billion dollars company with 4000 employees. Later, he was fired from his own company so he started NeXT Company and after NeXT, he started Pixar Company which used to create computers with animated features kept. Later on, Apple Company bought NeXT company. He returned to Apple Company and mixed both technologies with his new visions. These incidences helped him to see life from a different perspective and able to dominate the IT market with his new vision so he wants to relate the message not to lose faith, love your work and keep looking for the work that satisfies you.

Third story: Death

The last or the third story is about death. Here, in this story, he has narrated his death. He shares his experiences with cancer. He suffers from pancreatic cancer but never lost his hope. He became able to remove his cancer surgically. He says that we should enjoy every day as our last day. He says our time is limited so we shouldn't waste it. We should utilize it before we die. Similarly, we mustn't follow the crowd but instead, we should follow our heart. He also requests all to keep moving and exploring our potential.

Follow us on:



How to Live Before You Die – Complete Exercise

Understanding the text

Answer the following questions.

a. What is the story about Steve Jobs' birth?

Answer: Steve Jobs was given birth by an unwed college graduate student. She decided to put her baby for adoption during her pregnancy. She wanted her baby to be adopted by an educated family. Initially, a lawyer's family was ready to adopt Steve Jobs. But when he was born the lawyer's family insisted to adopt him as they had changed their minds to adopt a girl. Later a mechanic named Paul Jobs, and his wife, Clara Jobs adopted him with a promise that one day they would send him to college to study.

b. What does he mean when he says, "you can't connect the dots looking forward; you can only connect them looking backwards"?

Answer: By saying "you can't connect the dots looking forward; you can only connect them looking backwards", he wants to make it clear to all of us that our success and failures rely on how we learn lessons from our past experience. Life is full of suspenses and anything can happen at any time. Everyone has been failure once in a life. Learning from the failures and building up ourselves helps to get success in future. Taking his example, he had also faced a lot of failures in his life. He was dumped by his girlfriend. He also failed to get job at McKinsey. He wasted his four precious years without getting support from anyone. But he became successful at last. It proves that in our life, we shouldn't be worried about our failure instead we should learn from it because one day all the dots (our experience) will be connected to bring something great.

c. What happened when Steve Jobs turned 30?

Answer: When Steve Jobs turned 30, the board of directors fired him from his own company.

d. Jobs contends that you need to love to do what you do in order to be great at it. Do you agree or disagree? Why?

Answer: Yes, I agree with his views that we must love what we do

Follow us on:



AR Dinesh



puspas.com.np



Puspa Shrestha

to become great because continuous effort and hard work is required to carve our path to be success.

e. Is death really life's greatest invention?

Answer: Yes, death is life's greatest invention, death is inevitable and nobody lives forever. Nobody wants to die, but everyone shares this intellectual concept. Instead of being worried about death, one should look how he/she could do great until they survive.

Reference to the context

a. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow: "We have an unexpected baby boy; do you want him?" They said: "Of course."

i. Who was the baby boy?

Answer: Steve Jobs was the baby boy.

ii. What does 'do you want him?' mean?

Answer: 'Do you want him?' It is a question related to the adoption of Steve Jobs to his parents Paul and Clara Jobs, who were on the waiting list to adopt the baby.

iii. Who does 'they' refer to?

Answer: 'They' refer to Mr. Paul Jobs and Mrs. Clara Jobs.

b. Explain the following lines:

i. "You have to trust in something – your gut, destiny, life, karma, whatever."

Answer: This line was said by Steve Jobs in his speech at Stanford University. Here he advises everyone to believe in ourselves. We have to build up self-motivation as no one is going to do it for us. If we believe in ourselves and have faith nothing can stop us from being successful.

ii. "Your time is limited, so don't waste it living someone else's life."

Answer: Through this line the speaker is trying to convey that our

Follow us on:

life is limited and we shouldn't be trapped by other's principle. This can misguide us. We must listen to our own inner voice and utilize the time properly so that we could be the person what we want to be.

c. What does he mean by “don't settle”?

Answer: By “don't settle” he means that we should not accept something which isn't as good as it is meant to be. We should keep on putting our efforts until and unless we get the result we are searching for. Instead of running behind the success, we should go for the excellence. If we are excellent, success automatically comes to us.

d. Which style of speech is used by the speaker to persuade the audience?

Answer: The speaker uses a personal and informal style of expression that appears to be of narrative type to persuade the audience. The speech is short and simple, and heavily based on encouragement and he tries to motivate the audience with his real life stories.

e. It is not easy to motivate others. How do you think Steve Jobs' speech is so inspiring?

Answer: Steve Jobs' speech is emotional, passionate, inspirational and simply structured. It is so inspiring because of his act of delivering real life stories in his speech to motivate his audience. Each of the three stories from Jobs' life involves struggle or sacrifice. His speech encourages people to continue on the path of progress regardless of the family background they belong to. His life story is relatable to the many middle class peoples. He told us about how he struggled in his life to achieve success in his speech because of which I found it to be so inspiring.

f. Why do you think Steve Jobs used the personal narrative story telling technique in his speech? What influence does it have on the audiences?

Answer: I think Steve Jobs used the personal narrative storytelling technique in his speech to motivate his audiences. His speech contains several facts related to hardships, difficulties and struggles of life. It has a very positive influence on audiences. His speech

Follow us on:

gives a chance to audiences to know about what it takes to achieve a successful life in real sense.

Reference beyond the text

a. One of Steve Jobs mottos was: ‘Think differently’. Can this make a person succeed in life? What challenges are there in thinking differently?

Answer: Yes, thinking differently can make a person successful in life. We have to think differently and act differently in order to achieve success. Doing the thing that is already done by other or following the path that is already followed by other can't help us to gain success. Thinking differently is not an easy task. For this one should get into the real world and learn from the past activities. If we have different way of thinking then other people may find us to be crazy and they may demotivate us saying that it's not going to work. We should believe in ourselves, build up the self-confidence and do not run on other principles to become successful in our life.

b. What does the slogan “Stay hungry; stay foolish” mean to you?

Answer: The slogan “Stay hungry; stay foolish” means being prepared for accepting anything that comes to our life and working regularly to fulfill our dreams, wishes and desires. People stop after achieving a certain point in their life. We should not do that. Rather than that we should always dream higher and run behind it.

c. What does it mean to be a visionary? What makes Steve Jobs different from a fortune teller?

Answer: Being a visionary means to have a good vision or prospect for the future. Steve Jobs is quite different from a fortune teller in the sense that a fortune teller only predicts about people's life but people like Steve Jobs lead the society with new visions. They set the direction of future and work hard to get there. Their dream is to change the present situation of the world and make it better. Visionaries like Jobs not only think about self but also about the society.

THE END

Follow us on:



If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

[English](#)

[Nepali](#)

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Literature

Unit 3.3 What I Require from Life (Essays)

Class 11 English Exercise

J.B.S. Haldane

About Author/Writer

- Name: John Burdon Sanderson Haldane
- Lived between 1892 – 1964
- A British Indian Scientist
- Joined British Army and served during World War I
- A professed socialist, Marxist atheist, and humanist
- His political dissent led him to leave England in 1956 and lived in India becoming a naturalized Indian Citizen
- Major works include Daedalus Animal Biology etc.
- Founder of diabetes Darwinism.

Main Summary

J.B.S. Haldane is a social critic who has presented his idea about socialism. He used the mode of narrative writing to present his personal opinion with his personal story of his life and the heroic age.

According to him, although he was born in peaceful age but during his youth, due to the outbreak of the first world war, he had to involved himself in a heroic age of war. Later, he put forward his opinion related to his requirement to make his living best. According to him, his major requirements are described below.

Work:

It is Haldane's first requirement. He wants every healthy people at work in the entire world with a decent wage. Capitalism provides unemployment in the time of depression. Here, he represents the time frame of war when there are economic crises, and it's the time people need work and money. Similarly, he wants industries

Follow us on:

to be controlled by workers so that they can see the fruits of their work not profit for others but in friends well being.

Freedom:

Freedom is his second requirement. He wants more freedom of speech because the state's law stops him from speaking a lot. As a socialist, he has to speak more than others and he has to speak more than others and he needs to advocate equality and criticize the drawbacks of the present situation.

Health:

Health is the third requirement because he believes that a healthy citizen can bring a remarkable change in society. So he wants to be healthy enough to be fit for work and it is possible only with the fulfillment of food, housing, and medical attendance to everyone.

Friendship:

It's the fourth requirement. Being living in a society everyone needs friends and colleagues in any scientific and political work. He wants society with quality and could be criticized equally to all.
(Below are Minor requirements)

Adventure and thrill:

It also belongs to writers' needs. According to him the adventure of life will be useless without the risk factors. He means to describe it as he wants to involve himself in such adventurous work which can bring change in the life of people.

Desire and demands:

Here, according to the writer demand is something that we desire for or it must have. So desire is not the requirement but demand is more essential. Although he was fulfilled with all his desire but still unhappy with lacking essential things.

Peace and security:

Follow us on:



Peace and security are also part of his requirements; which is not present in this modern life. World War has destroyed peace, harmony, and security. Everythings were destroyed by fascism by Hitler and Mussolini. There is no fraternity, equality, and development without peace and security.

So by presenting all these requirements at last he wishes or desires to die as Socrates. Socrates dies at the age of 70 for his convictions. he willingly drank the cup of poison and died very happily. He desires the death of Socrates if not at least fulfilling his two conditions.

What I Require from Life – Complete Exercise

Understanding the text

Answer the following questions.

a. How does the writer distinguish between a peaceful age and a heroic age?

Answer: The writer distinguishes between a peaceful age and a heroic age by making a comparison between them. He recalls his birth time a peaceful age and the time of 1914, when the First World War took place as heroic age.

b. Why does the writer want more freedom of speech than most people?

Answer: The writer wants more freedom of speech than most people to express and explain what he feels about the society. He wants freedom of speech to tell the public about the issues like medicines, newspapers and drinks do not maintain quality.

c. According to the writer, what are the four general human needs?

Answer: According to the writer the four general human needs are work, freedom of speech, health and friendship.

d. What is the difference between desire and demand according to the writer?

Answer: According to the writer the difference between desire and

Follow us on:

demand is that the demand is related with the basic needs of life like food, clothes and shelter but desire includes things which improve living standard. The writer talks about car, garden, bathing pool and nearby beach as desires.

e. Why does the writer demand security?

Answer: The writer demands security because it is an important need for a person to live a happy life. He lived in the age of war and chaos due to which the lives of many peoples was in risk. So he demands security.

Reference to the context

Explain the following lines with reference to the context:

a. “The satisfaction of adventure is something much more solid than a thrill.”

Answer: The author believes that adventure is not only about emotions, but also about satisfaction in performing a creative activity. It enriches people with solid experience. He compares thrill with amusement he has got from reading Rimbaud’s poetry. He served on the war front in Madrid for six months and looked forward to read a book of Rimbaud’s poetry for a thrill.

b. “I want the workers to see the fruit of their own work not in profits for others, but in their own and their friends’ well-being.”

Answer: The line shows the writer’s support for socialism. He asserts the hardworking should be rewarded directly to a considerable extent. He wants democracy within the working environment. He is a socialist who wants industry to be controlled by the workers. They should be free to work and share profit among themselves too. He compares the nature of industrial work with hunting and gardening like of paleolithic and neolithic. To create an even and pleasing working atmosphere the profits of work should remain among working people.

c. Why do you think the essayist has taken reference from the ancient philosophers?

Answer: I think the essayist has taken reference from the ancient

Follow us on:

philosopher like Aristotle, Lord Blam, Mr. Dash, and Sir John Asterisk to support his ideas and convince the readers about his idea of decent work and death.

d. Discuss the essay in terms of its language, purpose, subject, point of view and mode of writing.

Answer: The language is simple and lucid in the essay. Haldane's style is typically straight forward and vigorous. As a science popularize, he is accustomed to write about complex matters in a simple language so that any reader can understand. Here, when writing on a non- technical subject, he retains this simplicity, with short, forceful, declarative sentences and clear explanations.

His subject at first appears to be personal and thus made of writing descriptive. However, in the second part of his essay, it becomes clear that he is putting forward a political argument freedom, for instance not merely a personal preference of Haldane's but a universal requirement. This means that society should be structured in such a way as to maximize freedom for everyone.

His viewpoint is that of a social critic, setting forth a general program of the principles that should underlie to a civilized society.

Reference beyond the text

a. What do you require from your life to be happy and satisfied?

Answer: I require good health, a job, friendship, freedom & security from my life to be happy and satisfied.

b. What is socialism? How is it different from capitalism?

Answer: Socialism is a system of social and economic equality in which private property and ownership are not prioritized. It differs from capitalism because capitalism does not provide economic equality. Unlike socialism, capitalism ignores people's needs and does not promote equal opportunity.

c. Write an essay about your dream house.

Answer:

Follow us on:

My Dream House

My dream house is an ideal house that I always imagine. House becomes home when we pour love to our family members. It is a place where different generation live together in a single bond. So, my dream house will be full of love and happiness.

I always dream of a mountainous wooden home. My ideal home should be facing a river. Through the windows, I could watch the mountains sunset and vanish. It should be facing East direction because I want to enjoy cool air as well as rising sun view. My ideal home would include a little garden with my own veggies and fruits.

I would like to maintain my house neat and clean. There will be a meditation room for myself to do Yoga and meditation. I will also make one library room for my family and visitors. I will make a special room for my parents and visitors. I won't add too much amenities in my dream house because it creates laziness. I believe that physical exercises are necessary to be healthy and fit. There will be solar panel in my house to maintain regular light. I will also add a big smart TV for my parents and visitors. My house's wall will be decorated with beautiful wall paintings capturing nature's true beauty. I also have a 1 year old pet dog named Puppy. I also want a modest but cozy area in Puppy's home where he may sleep and rest when he gets old.

My dream home is a place of joy, peace and beauty. Right now it exists only in my dreams. But someday, it will become a reality.

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Follow us on:



AR Dinesh



puspas.com.np



Puspa Shrestha

Puspa Shrestha

Best Quality Resource Site for Class 11 And 12 Students
(Based on Updated Curriculum 2077)

Page | 227

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

English

Nepali

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Literature

Unit 3.4 What is Poverty? (Essays)

Class 11 English Exercise

Jo Goodwin Parker

Summary

An anonymous person named Jo Goodwin Parker from West Virginia, in the southern United States, wrote this personal essay titled “What is Poverty?” With a note from Jo Goodwin Parker, she mailed her essay to George Henderson, a professor at the University of Oklahoma. This essay was later published without any additional information about the author or source.

This essay contains the writer’s painful life experiences as well as the hardships she faced as a result of her poverty. She has detailed her dreadful childhood and adulthood experiences.

Main Summary

In this essay, Jo Goodwin Parker has described her life living in poverty and her daily struggles for the sake of her family. According to her poverty has many faces. For her poverty is living with dirt, living without hope, better foodstuff, medical care, proper sanitation, and proper education. It is like an acid that destroys one’s pride, honor, health, and future. She describes herself as dirty, smelly, and living life without proper clothes. She also describes that due to the high cost of essential things she does not have luxuries in her life.

She could not even afford the necessary items because of her poverty. She could not even get any help and support from the government agencies because it never exists in her area. She wants to get help through various agencies but she has no means to travel to reach them. Her job even does not support her to get out of her situation because it does not pay enough for the expense of child care. So Parker writes that poverty is looking into a black future

Follow us on:

because running life on a daily basis itself is a great challenge. In this situation, no one can expect a good future.

Parker does not want sympathy but she wants an understanding of her readers about poverty. Because of poverty, she left school at a very early age, got married, became pregnant many times because birth control was expensive for her. Even her husband left her because of poverty. her economic status was too poor so health does not come as a priority and could not do her operation in time. She used to give cornbread without oil as a breakfast to her kids. She did not buy soap in order to buy her baby diapers. She visited various government and private agencies to ask for help but could not find the right person to help her. She felt shame and humiliation for the sake of her three children. She had to spread her hands in different places.

What is Poverty? – Complete Exercise

Understanding the text

Answer the following questions.

a. What is poverty according to Parker?

Answer: According to Parker, poverty is about lack of having enough money for necessities, better foodstuffs, very little education and little or no access to health care. It is like an acid that destroys pride, honour, health and future. Overall poverty means living without hope, better foods, medical care and proper education.

b. How is poverty difficult for Parker's children? List some specific examples.

Answer: Parker's three children suffer a lot due to poverty. They live their miserable lives due to the lack of proper foodstuffs, education, clothing and care. Parker has presented the very bad condition of her children along with her. According to her, they eat oil less cornbread as a breakfast. They wear dirty clothes. They aren't sent to a school. Parker has informed us about a day's event when she left her children under the care of her mother during her job. When she returned, she found her youngest covered with flyspecks whose diaper hadn't been changed since morning. Her next son was

Follow us on:

playing with the broken glasses. Her eldest son was playing on the edge of the lake. Her children would play in dirt. In this way poverty is difficult for Parker's children.

c. How does Parker try to obtain help, and what problems does she encounter?

Answer: Parker tries to obtain help from different people but she was rejected. She asks her relative for a loan, but her relative wanted something in return. She also tried in different offices for job and asked for loan too. She had to describe her pathetic condition to many people to get help. Finally, someone comes out and asks her if she needs help. That isn't the person she needs to see. She goes to see another person. After telling him the whole story about her poverty she finds that this is the wrong office. Then, she must repeat the whole process. In this way, Parker has to encounter a lot of problems.

d. Why are people's opinions and prejudices her greatest obstacles?

Answer: People's opinions and prejudices are her greatest obstacles because these aspects prevent her from getting supportive hands for the sake of her family. She was dominated by other people due to her poor condition. Most of the people don't realize the bitter experience of poverty. For them, the pain of poor people is nothing. They keep on giving their free advices as if being poor is a curse and it is easy to come out of poverty. When she asks for help, some want to take advantage of her helplessness. Such prejudices make her unable to get help.

e. How does Parker defend her inability to get help? How does she discount the usual solutions society has for poverty (e.g., welfare, education, and health clinics)?

Answer: Parker defends her inability to get help through her opinions and by expressing her experiences of poverty. She discounts the usual solutions society has for poverty by drawing the attention of people towards the pathetic state of poor people. She says that living without hope, medical care, and proper education is like an acid that destroys pride, honour, health and future. She has to move and spread her hands in many agencies in the name of welfare where she has to be ashamed and humiliated. She has to prove her poverty time and again and face rejection. In the name of

Follow us on:

education, school-launched programs are there but they are of no use. She has experienced her two children's condition after sending them to school. Parker's life is quite away from health clinics' facilities. To get medical help, she has to walk miles. If she asks for someone's help, the helper expects negative things from her. Thus, Parker shows how shameful, humiliating and disgusting it is to be poor.

Reference to the context

a. Explain the following: *Poverty is looking into a black future.*

Answer: This line "Poverty is looking into a black future" has been stated by the writer Jo Goodwin Parker in her essay. She has put forward this line for her readers to present her experience of poverty. She thinks that poor can't provide proper food and education to their children. Nor they can maintain cleanliness and sound health because they don't have money. Such condition ultimately invites disease, helplessness, hunger, unemployment, crimes etc. So, poverty leads people towards the black future. Poor people have to live a miserable life on their daily basis. They have no hope of any betterment. They keep on spending their lives in disparity looking into a black future. Poverty breaks expectations and dreams of future.

b. What does Parker mean by "The poor are always silent"?

Answer: "The poor are always silent" means the helplessness of poor people who cannot spend money for healthcare and medicine. When the question of money arises, they are silent, because they can't even dream of having expensive medical operations, eating in restaurant, wearing fashionable dresses, going to quality schools etc. They have no words in response because they are completely helpless. Where money speaks, they are voiceless. They have very pathetic situation.

c. What writing strategy does the author use at the beginning of most of the paragraphs? Do you notice a recurring pattern? What is it?

Answer: In this essay, the author uses her repetition strategy at the

Follow us on:

beginning of most of the paragraphs. She repeats the phrase “Poverty is”. The essay is well organized where she repeats the word – poverty many times. That means her main concern is poverty and she is showing her bitter feelings and frustrations about her miserable conditions. The whole essay sounds like a casual conversation. She is talking to an imaginary reader who does not understand what poverty is. She uses satire and humour in the middle.

d. How does Parker develop each paragraph? What details make each paragraph memorable?

Answer: Parker develops each paragraph starting with her repetition strategy. She begins most of her paragraphs with a repetition statement as “Poverty is”. She then provides her personal experiences about her topic sentences.

The images of poverty that she mentioned in each paragraph is memorable. She says poverty is a chisel that chips on honour is worn away. The really poor people have inferiority complex due to the economic factor. Their honour is really scattered. Even if the man is wise and intellectual he can do nothing in front of the wealth. The details related to her personal painful experiences and the bitter reality of poverty make each paragraph memorable.

e. In the final paragraph, how does the author use questions to involve the reader in the issue of poverty?

Answer: In the final paragraph, the author uses questions in her informal style of direct conversation to involve the readers in the issue of poverty. In the final paragraph she uses question “can you be silent too?” where she wants to describe her silence due to poverty that she faced in her life. She asked us that if poor are silence and should we be silenced too. Parker is capable of causing the reader to feel many emotions and forces the reader to question her own stereotypes of poor Parker is capable of making the reader feel guilty for the possessions that she has. She wanted to make attention to the reader to solve the problems of poor people. They must not think about themselves only she said not to be silence and help others for their better future. She asked reader if his/her in that situation, can they be silence too. Poor people are always active to raise their voices. So, Parker wanted from the reader to give their attention towards poor too.

Follow us on:

Reference beyond the text

a. Define a social problem (homelessness, unemployment, racism) imitating Parker's style.

Answer:

A Social Problem: Unemployment

Unemployment the word itself if stays longer would affect the cost of the economy. The entire individual who is not working in the referenced period falls under the category of unemployment. They might be anyone who is highly skilled or having no skills. When unemployment reaches above the expected rates it subtle the growth and leads to social issues. With no money, there is no education, food resources and basic elements for the survivor. Whether someone is homeless or has no job, this all head place to social issues.

In conclusion, unemployment is the major problem that creates disturbance, stress and lowers down a growing economy. The personal and social concern has been associated with poverty, population, lack of technologies, health risks, and slow expansion of the business. All these issues arise when unemployment exponentially grow within countries. This certainly remarks about the serious problems of housing and hopeless life. Unemployment causes harm for the economy not in the sense of waste of resources but also by building pressure on the community.

b. Using adjectives to highlight the futility of the situation, write a short definition essay on Growing up in Poverty.

Answer:

Essay on Growing Up in Poverty

Poverty is a state or condition in which a person or community lacks the financial resources and essentials for a minimum standard of living. Poverty means that the income level from employment is so low that basic human needs can't be met. Poverty-stricken people and families might go without proper housing, clean water, healthy

Follow us on:

food, and medical attention. Each nation may have its own threshold that determines how many of its people are living in poverty.

Growing up in poverty is annoying and frustrating that never allows you to be happy. When one cannot manage the minimum requirements of life like food, education and health, that life is a punishment. One's creativity and natural talent can never come out. Rather such situation humiliates him and he can never live a dignified human life. Disparity and inequality never let him be free and do something good in his lives. Growing up in poverty is a frightening experience where one has to face various hardships and struggles. It provides him with tiring and worrying experience where pains are always ready to welcome him.

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

[English](#)

[Nepali](#)

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Literature

Unit 3.5 Scientific Research is a Token of Humankind's Survival (Essays) Class 11 English Exercise

Vladimir Keilis

Introduction

Vladimir Keilis-Borok was a Russian mathematical geophysicist and seismologist. Here, he talks about how science has given greater contribution to the lives of the people. This essay has shown how scientists across the globe, rise above their national identities, to find solutions for common problems of nations. The speaker/writer advocates science saying that science is the indispensable guardian and caretaker of humankind.

Summary

Although scientists have low earnings in comparison to businessmen, doctors, lawyers etc., some people decide to be scientists because they cannot live without science. It's an exciting adventure where the major reward comes from the discovery itself. In that way, scientists get honors and promotions and they enjoy freedom, camaraderie and independence.

Next, the writer talks about his experience during the cold war. During 1960, he was invited to Geneva to attend a discussion about nuclear weapons. At that time, people were worried of destructive nuclear weapons of Russia, America and England. The three nuclear powers were willing to come to an agreement putting a ban on new nuclear test. However, they faced a problem that if anyone violated the agreement by secret underground testing of nuclear weapons, how they could detect that test. For that, the technical experts including the writer were called to solve that problem. As a seismologist, the writer had theoretical knowledge in seismic waves that could easily detect underground nuclear explosions as well as

Follow us on:



tremors produced by earthquakes. Here, his knowledge had a direct application in the survival of the humankind. That episode taught the writer that science is the hope of survival and well-being of all.

Scientists are the most practical people in the world. This could be seen in new technologies, new brands of the industry from defense to entertainment. The scientists invent antibiotics, electronics, biotechnology, synthetic fibers, the green revolution, and genetic forensic diagnosis etc. The basic knowledge of science always supports people in their lives.

The survival of our civilization is threatened by natural and man-made disasters. Among them, the natural disasters are earthquakes, a self-inflicted destruction of megacities, environmental catastrophes, economic and social crises. A massive release of radioactivity from nuclear waste disposal and an outburst of mass violence etc. are man-made disasters.

Science is our indispensable guardian and caretaker because it is the only science that can ensure that we move with time safely. For the survival of humankind, countries had signed treaty of not testing the nuclear weapons secretly. But science and its scientists ensured about humankind's survival. It is the only science that can differentiate between the tremors caused by nuclear explosions and natural earthquakes. It is science that can give us new sources of energy, new mineral deposits, and efficient defense from terrorism.

The hope of science for the survival of mankind has larger significance. In the present scenario the safety of mankind is threatened by both natural and manmade disasters. Be it a tsunami, be it terrorism, money alone cannot tackle the problem. Scientific solutions are the only hope. Thus, the writer has numerous reasons to conclude that science is the hope of survival.

Scientific Research is a Token of Humankind's Survival – Complete Exercise

Understanding the text

Follow us on:



Answer the following questions.

a. What does a scientist get instead of big money?

Answer: A scientist gets freedom, camaraderie and independence instead of big money.

b. What was the problem that the nuclear powers had faced?

Answer: The nuclear powers had agreed to a moratorium to stop the test of nuclear weapons. But, they had faced the problem that if anyone violated the agreement by secret underground testing of nuclear weapons, they would not be able to detect it.

c. In which area did Keilis Borok's theoretical knowledge have a direct application?

Answer: As a seismologist, he had theoretical knowledge in seismic waves that could easily detect underground nuclear explosions as well as tremors produced by earthquakes. His knowledge could easily detect secret underground nuclear test. Here, his knowledge had a direct application in the survival of the humankind.

d. What was the important decision that the politicians took before Geneva Summit?

Answer: The important decision that the politicians took before Geneva Summit was to ban nuclear weapons test for the shake of survival of humanity. According to them, after banning nuclear tests, there would be no competition for developing nuclear weapons.

e. What are the natural and man-made disasters as mentioned by the author?

Answer: The natural disasters mentioned by the author are earthquakes, self-inflicted destruction of megacities, environmental catastrophes, economic and social crises, and so on. The man-made disasters mentioned include a massive release of radioactivity from nuclear waste disposal, an outburst of mass violence, war, and so on.

Reference to the context

Follow us on:

a. The professional addressed as ‘you’ in the sentence “If you are clever, why are you so poor?” refers to a...

i. lawyer ii. doctor iii. scientist iv. businessman.

Justify your choice.

Answer: Here the ‘you’ refers to a scientist. The author wants to know why some people with clever and brilliant mind want to be scientists though other professionals like lawyers, doctors and businessmen earn much more. The author intends to show that although scientists are very wise, their wisdom does not generally help them in generating wealth. Thus, scientists are generally wise but not wealthy.

b. The writer says, “I found myself in Geneva.” What does it express?

Answer: It expresses the surprise of the writer. He says the above line because he was summoned all of a sudden to attend the meeting related to nuclear weapons in Geneva.

c. Are the following statements true? Why or why not? Discuss with your partner.

i. Money is more powerful than intellectual resources.

Answer: This statement is not true. Money can give us the power to make a difference in the lives of others, but not the desire to do so. It can give us the time to develop and nurture our relationships, but not the love and caring necessary to do so. It can just as easily make us jaded, escapist, selfish, and lonely. How much do you need? What is it going to cost you to get it? It is keeping these two questions in mind that gives us a true sense of money’s relationship to happiness. If we have less than what we need, or if what we have is costing us too much, we can never be happy.

ii. Intellectual resources help survival of the mankind.

Answer: This statement is true. It is because of the intellectual resources that we have combated many diseases. Though man is not the fittest among all the creations of God, he is able to ensure his safety against the other powerful creatures of nature because of his intellectual resources. Basic research can help our survival by giving us new sources of energy and new mineral deposits. Basic research can also protect us against terrorism.

Follow us on:



AR Dinesh



puspas.com.np



Puspa Shrestha

iii. Basic research is a way of stalling disasters.

Answer: This statement is true. People in the world are living their life securely believing in scientific researches. Scientists keep on studying the ecological changes and forewarn people about natural disasters like earthquakes, tsunamis, storms etc. People can be evacuated from the area posed with danger.

d. How does the essayist justify that scientific research is the humankind's survival?

Answer: The essayist justifies that scientific research is the humankind's survival by presenting his opinions in favour of science and its research-based inventions. As a seismologist, he had theoretical knowledge in seismic waves that could easily detect underground nuclear explosions as well as tremors produced by earthquakes. His knowledge could easily detect secret underground nuclear test. Here, his knowledge had a direct application in the survival of the humankind. According to him, science is the indispensable guardian and caretaker of humankind's survival. Scientific researchers have found the solutions to the problems of human beings. It has given us new sources of energy, new mineral deposits, medicines and efficient defense from terrorism. Scientific researches can easily predict the upcoming disasters ecological changes and forewarn people. People can be evacuated from the area posed with danger. Thus, the writer has numerous reasons to conclude that scientific research is the hope of humankind's survival.

e. What can be the purpose of the essayist of using quotations in the essay?

Answer: The purpose of the essayist's use of quotations in the essay is to support the ideas and arguments presented in the essay. He wants to get all of his readers aware to the main points that he wishes to convey. People have many misconceptions about science and scientists so he compares public understanding and the reality of a scientist's life. So in order to support his ideas, the writer uses quotations.

f. Discuss and illustrate the writer's stand that scientists are the most practical people in the world.

Answer: The writer's stand here in this essay is that scientists are

Follow us on:

the most practical people in the world. According to him, all new technologies and new brands of industry from defense to entertainment are the result of scientists' research. The scientists invent antibiotics, electronics, biotechnology, synthetic fibers, modes of transport, the green revolution, and genetic forensic diagnosis etc. Only the scientific research can provide us new sources of energy and new minerals, efficient defense from terrorism, cure from cancer and new forms of transportation. By this we can say that scientists are the most practical people in the world.

Reference beyond the text

a. Everyone lives under the fear of annihilation by nuclear weapons. Explain this statement.

Answer: Nuclear weapons are the most terrifying weapon ever invented: no weapon is more destructive; no weapon causes such unspeakable human suffering; and there is no way to control how far the radioactive fallout will spread or how long the effects will last.

Although the superpowers have already reached an agreement to stop nuclear test, the growing competition for power has increased fear and uncertainty about our future. It is a truth that Soviet Union, the United States and the United Kingdom have more than enough nuclear bombs to destroy the other nations in their first strike. A nuclear bomb detonated in a city would immediately kill tens of thousands of people, and tens of thousands more would suffer horrific injuries and later die from radiation exposure. Hiroshima and Nagasaki always remind people of the bitter truth. Anytime, the global politics can deteriorate and crazy rulers like that of North Korea can forget humanity and the world population can suffer. Therefore, every man, woman, and child on the earth is living under the threat of annihilation by nuclear weapons.

b. The essayist says 'While there is science, there is hope of survival and wellbeing for all of us.' Explain it.

Answer: According to the essayist, science is our indispensable

Follow us on:



guardian and caretaker because it is the only science that can ensure that we are moving with time safely. For the survival of humankind, countries have signed the treaty of not testing nuclear weapons secretly. Specialists can invigilate the moves of different countries and make us alert on time. Science can differentiate between the tremors caused by nuclear explosions and natural earthquakes. It gives us new sources of energy, new mineral deposits, efficient defense from terrorism, antibiotics and cure for human diseases. Besides that, science teaches us how to preserve our ecosystem and biosphere correcting our past mistakes. At present, the safety of mankind is threatened by both natural and man-made disasters. Be it a tsunami, be it terrorism, money alone cannot tackle the problem. Scientific solutions are the only hope. Therefore, while there is science, there is hope of survival and wellbeing for all of us.

c. Is science a blessing or a curse? Write an essay on it
Answer:

Science – A Blessing or A Curse

Science has benefited man in several ways. It has made man's life more comfortable, more secure and more powerful. But it is not an unmixed blessing. There are several disadvantages of science. However, the advantages far outweigh the disadvantages.

Science has revolutionized the human existence. Take, for instance, electricity which is one of the many gifts of science. All one has to do is to press a button. The room is flooded with light, the fan begins to whirr and give refreshing air, or still more, a desert cooler or an air conditioner turns the room into a hill resort. Thousand types of machines are run by electricity. Room heaters, electric ovens and cooking ranges and several other household appliances are operated by electricity. It runs factories which produce innumerable things of our daily use.

Science has also relieved to a great extent human suffering. Advance in the field of medicine and surgery have reduced the rate of infant mortality. The average life span of man has increased. Today, many the dreaded diseases like cholera, small-pox and even

Follow us on:



tuberculosis are easily curable with the help of medicines. Surgery can remove malignant also proved to be harmful. The machine age made many people unemployed. Now there is no need for so many hands to do a task. Only one person is required to manipulate the machine. Thus, it has led to unemployment.

In the light of all these grave dangers, it is imperative that man tries to make judicious use of machines. After all, man had applied his mind to invent new things not to make his life miserable, but to make it more comfortable and better. Machines should serve mankind. Man should ensure that he does not allow them to destroy his environment and health and put the life of all living things in grave danger beyond a point of no return.

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

[English](#)

[Nepali](#)

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Literature

Unit 4.1 Trifles (One Act Plays)

Class 11 English Exercise

Susan Glaspell

Understanding the text

Answer the following questions.

a. Do you believe that Mrs. Wright killed her husband? Explain.

Answer: Yes, I believed that Mrs. Wright killed her husband. After listening to the conversation of two women they were comparing Mrs. Wright before marriage life and after marriage life. By this we can understand that Mrs. Wright had very wonderful life before marriage and after marriage, her life was boring. She couldn't sing talk to anybody, depressed and her bird was killed by her husband. So, in case of revenge she killed her husband.

b. Do you think Mr. Wright's death would have been uncovered if Mr. Hale hadn't stopped by the Wrights' home?

Answer: No, I don't think Mr. Wright's death would have been uncovered if Mr. Hale hadn't stopped by the Wrights' home because if Mr. Hale hadn't stopped by the Wrights' home, nobody would ever know about Mr. Wright's death as the location of the house was quite far from the road and the news of his death will remain suppressed.

c. Why does Mrs. Hale think that Mrs. Wright's worries about her preserves indicate her innocence?

Answer: Mrs. Hale suggests think that Mrs. Wright's worries about her preserves indicate her innocence because she did not feel happy and she contrasts Mrs. Hale saying that only an innocent woman would ask for an apron and a shout while worrying about fruit. So because of this, Mrs. Hale thinks that Mrs. Wright's worries about her preserves indicate her innocent.

d. How does Mrs. Peters' homesteading experience connect her to Mrs. Wright?

Follow us on:

Answer: Mrs. Peter end up protecting Minnie Wright by hiding the strangled canary, which could be used as key evidence against her. Although Mrs. Peter's is the sheriff's wife and married to the law she comes to the same conclusion as Mrs. Wright and ultimately acting on her behalf. In this way Mrs. Peter's home steading experience connects her to Mrs. Wright.

e. How do the women's perspectives on men differ?

Answer: The woman's perspectives on men differ by the fact that the mens are powerful and have become stupid and lazy but the women have no power except that of intelligence, which allows them to manipulate the men.

Reference to the context

Read the extract from the play given below and answer the questions that follow:

a. "MRS. PETERS:(glancing around). Seems funny to think of a bird here. But she must have had one, or why would she have a cage? I wonder what happened to it?"

MRS. HALE: I s'pose maybe the cat got it."

i. Who does 'she' refer to?

Answer: 'She' refers to Mrs. Wright.

ii. What does the word 'one' stand for?

Answer: The word 'one' stands for a bird.

iii. What is the full form of "s'pose"

Answer: The full form of "s'pose" is "suppose."

iv. What do you mean when Mrs. Hale says, "the cat got it"?

Answer: When Mrs. Hale says, "the cat got it", I mean "the cat must have caught the bird."

b. "MRS. HALE: Wright was close. she used to wear pretty clothes and be lively, when she was Minnie Foster, one of the town girls singing in the choir But that— oh, that was thirty years ago."

Follow us on:

i. Why does Mrs. Hale refer to Mrs. Wright as “Minnie Foster”?

Answer: Mrs. Hale refers to Mrs. Wright as “Minnie Foster” because, before her marriage, Mrs. Wright was a very beautiful singer. She was known as Minnie Foster, and she used to dress pretty and sing in the choir.

ii. What does her description tell you about Mrs. Wright?

Answer: Mrs. Wright was a beautiful singer before her marriage, according to her description. Her name was Minnie Foster, who used to sing beautifully and wear pretty clothes thirty years ago.

iii. What does Mrs. Hale mean by “that was thirty years ago”?

Answer: By “that was thirty years ago”, Mrs. Hale refers to the period in Mrs. Wright’s life when she was an unmarried and well-known singer known as Minnie Foster.

c. What is the main theme of the play?

Answer: The main themes in Trifles are gender, isolation, and justice.

Gender: The male characters only want to utter evidence of Minnie’s crime, whereas the women came to understand the emotional pain that drove Minnie to murder her husband.

Isolation: Minnie wright is isolated from her famous and family by her controlling abusive husband.

Justice: The man and woman have different conceptions of justice. The man want Minnie to be convicted of murder whereas the woman hide the evidence that would have convicted Minnie out of respect for the years of abuse Minnie suffered.

d. Discuss the symbolism used in the play.

Answer: Symbolism is a literary device which is used to represent a concept through symbols or underlying meanings of objects or qualities. Here in this play, we find various things that symbolize varieties of hidden meanings which are as follows:

1. **The preservative jars:** These jars symbolize the cold and broken marriage relationship between Mrs. Wright and her husband.
2. **Singing Canary bird:** The singing Canary bird symbolizes the freedom of Mrs. Wright before her marriage.

Follow us on:

3. **The birdcage:** The birdcage symbolizes the trapped life of Mrs. Wright after her marriage.
4. **Wrung neck of canary:** It symbolizes the concept of revenge in a tit for tat manner. Mr. Wright has also been murdered with a rope around his neck instead of a gun.
5. **Knot in a quilt:** Mrs. Hale's dialogue as the knot in a quilt symbolizes the murder with a rope. The stitches in the particular quilt even symbolize the nervousness of Mrs. Wright.

e. Discuss the setting of the play. Does it have an impact on the theme of the play?

Answer: This play is set in Mr. John Wright's abandoned farmhouse. The house is a lonesome, gloomy place down in the hollow where the road cannot be seen.

Yes, it have an impact on the theme of the play. The play is set in a rural area, more specifically at an abandoned farmhouse. Being in a rural landscape, the characters are meant to represent real people. And although this is a set in American's heartland, the relatively larger distance between neighbours in rural farming areas implies a sense of loneliness that parallels Mrs. Wright's loneliness. In this way, the setting have an impact on the theme of the play.

Reference beyond the text

a. The credibility of a character is determined not only by the character's thoughts and actions but also by what other characters say and think about him or her. Discuss in relation to the characters of Trifles.

Answer: In this play, we all readers are brought towards off-stage main character Mrs. Wright through on stage characters like Mrs. Hale and Mrs. Peters. Here, these two on-stage characters keep on discussing and informing us about various aspects of Mrs. Wright's life. Their discussion related to Mrs. Wright while investigating has provided us with various hidden aspects of Mrs. Wright's life. Thanks to women's knowledge, we may learn about Mrs. Wright's life and suffering. Readers are engaged in knowing about their life narrative emotionally. Both ladies and Mrs. Wright's descriptions seem unbelievable. Their contributions to the play made all readers happy with Mrs. Wright. The work of these two characters, Mrs.

Follow us on:



AR Dinesh



puspas.com.np



Puspa Shrestha

Wright was favorably represented in the eyes of all readers. Everybody sympathizes with Mrs. Wright.

b. Dramatic irony occurs when the reader or audience has information that is unknown to the characters in a play; it creates tension and suspense. Analyse the play discussing the author's use of dramatic irony based on these questions:

(i) What information is crucial to the play Trifles?

Answer: Dramatic irony is a literary device that has been created when the audience or reader comes to know the things at first that are hidden. The key information in this play about dramatic irony is that Ms. Wright killed her husband. The readers know the reasons behind the murder via the discussion of Mrs. Hale and Mrs. Peters, but these facts are not known to the male characters who seem to be concerned with discovering clues.

(ii) How does the playwright use this information to create dramatic irony?

Answer: To create dramatic irony, the playwright creates various twists and suspenses. The playwright keeps on presenting information related to murder through predictions and proofs given by the characters during the time of investigation to find the actual murderer.

(iii) What effect does the dramatic irony have on the audience and on the play?

Answer: Dramatic irony is very well managed and presented by the playwright. It has put the audience and readers above the leading male characters of the play. It has managed all the readers' attention, anticipation, hope, fear, curiosity and suspense. Here, the readers have got the actual information before all male characters of the play. Dramatic irony has made this play very interesting and full of twists where facts are disclosed creating curiosity among the readers.

THE END

Follow us on:



If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

[English](#)

[Nepali](#)

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Literature

Unit 4.2 A Sunny Morning (One Act Plays)

Class 11 English Exercise

Serafin and Joaquin Alvarez Quintero

Characters – A Sunny Morning

- Dona Laura, a handsome old lady of 70
- Don Gonzalo, an old man of 70
- Petra, maid of Laura
- Juanito, servant of Gonzalo
- Place: A park of Madrid (Spain)

Introduction

The one-act play, “A Sunny Morning – A Comedy of Madrid” is a hilarious comic play written by Serafin and Joaquin Alveraz Quintero, popularly known as the ‘Golden Boys of Madrid Theatre’. The entire play revolves around two major characters Don Gonzalo and Dona Laura, who in their youth were passionate lovers but estranged by the cruelty of the fate. After several years of their separation now in their 70’s both Don Gonzalo and Dona Laura accidentally meet in a park of Madrid but they are not able to recognise each other. As they begin to talk they slowly drifted to recall their past and soon they realise individually that they were passionate lovers of the past. However, they are unwilling to disclose their real identity and introduced themselves as friends of those lovers.

Summary of A Sunny Morning

The play opens in the setting of a park where Dona Laura enters the park with the help of her maid, Petra and finds place to sit on a bench to feed the birds with breadcrumbs. Meanwhile, Don Gonzalo also enters the park with his servant, Juanito and hesitates to sit on other side of the bench, which was already occupied by Dona Laura. He even curses the priests for being occupied his bench on which he

Follow us on:

usually sits in every sunny morning. He looks negatively at every aspect of his life and goes on complaining whereas Laura expresses her grievances when others disturb her. In the beginning both of them are reluctant at each other but soon they tried to understand each other in the progress of their conversation.

Sharing a pinch of snuff between them softens their tone into friendliness. Soon their conversation stumbles upon reading books. This paves the way for the next level of their story. Dona Laura reads a poem from a book given by Don Gonzalo, which surprises them, that they were the lovers of several decades before and now talking about themselves. However, they do not want to disclose their true identities since they have lost seen each other in early youth. So, they spin fictitious stories where Laura identifies herself as a friend of ‘The Silver Maiden’ Laura Llorente while Don Gonzalo identifies himself as the cousin of Don Gonzalo.

Laura Llorente lived at Maricela in Valencia. She was known as ‘The Silver Maiden’ in her locality. Gonzalo would pass by on his horseback every morning under Laura’s house window and would toss a bouquet of flowers up to her balcony. In the afternoon, while he would return by the same path and catch a bouquet of flowers that she would toss him down. When Laura’s parents wanted to marry her to a merchant a duel was followed and the merchant was badly wounded by Gonzalo. Don Gonzalo fled away fearing of the consequences. Laura waited for days and months and not hearing from him for a long time she left her home one afternoon and went to the beach. While she was engrossed in Don Gonzalo’s thoughts she was washed away by the waves.

Don Gonzalo also tried to spin his version of a story about his supposed cousin. Gonzalo also loved Laura intensely. After injuring the merchant seriously, fearing the consequences, he took refuge in Seville and Madrid. He wrote many letters to her but her parents seized them. As there was no reply, in despair, he joined the army and went to Africa where he died in one of the trenches holding the flag of Spain and muttering the name of his love, Laura.

In reality, after two years of their separation, Laura married someone and settled down in her life. Similarly, Gonzalo

Follow us on:



disappointed over his lost love, three months later he too married a ballet dancer and settled down in Paris. Though, they were separated, in their hearts the yearning for the romantic love continued. When they met in the park after nearly 50 years both of them were able to recall their intense romantic affair. Although they came to know about each other in reality, they did not want to reveal, as they had lost their charming youth. Thus the play “A Sunny Morning entertains the audience.

A Sunny Morning – Complete Exercise

Understanding the text

Answer the following questions.

a. What makes Dona Laura think that Don Gonzalo is an ill-natured man? Why do neither Dona Laura nor Don Gonzalo reveal their true identities?

Answer: Gonzalo looks at everything negatively. He is reluctant to sit on the bench of Laura and insists that he wants his own bench. When he sees his usual bench occupied by the priests already, he is angry and he curses them. He asks his servant, Juanito to drive them away. Gonzalo scares the pigeons that Laura was feeding. Because of all these reasons, Laura thinks that Gonzalo is an ill-natured man.

They are both ashamed of their failed love affair. Now they have lost their youth and taken different courses in life. That’s why talking about their past relationship directly is meaningless. Exposing their identities simply makes them unhappy and sad. That’s why in order to avoid bitter feelings, they don’t reveal their identity.

b. At what point of time, do you think, Laura and Gonzalo begin to recognise each other?

Answer: When both of them start talking about the failed love affair of Laura Llorente and a gallant lover, they slowly recognize each other. However, Laura says that woman was her best friend and

Follow us on:

Gonzalo says that the lover was his cousin. Both of them know the events in detail. It makes them sure that they were the old lovers.

c. When does Dona Laura realise that Don Gonzalo was her former lover?

Answer: When Laura says that the silver maiden was very unfortunate because of her sad love affair, Gonzalo also answers in the same way as if he knows about that affair. It makes Laura clear that Gonzalo was her lover, otherwise he would not have known the personal matters of others.

d. Why do Dona Laura and Don Gonzalo spin fictitious stories about themselves?

Answer: They spin fictitious stories to prove that they were really serious in their love, but because of providence of destiny, their love could not be successful. They wanted to hide their weaknesses and prove each other really helpless. They do it to collect sympathy.

e. How do Dona Laura and Don Gonzalo feel about each other?

Answer: When they know each other as old-time lovers, they feel good. The emotional tides again bind them together. A new friendship starts and they promise to meet again at the park. Someone has rightly said about lover and wine-the older they are the better they taste and feel.

Reference to the context

a. Look at the extract below and answer the questions that follow:
“Yes, you are only twenty. (She sits down on the bench.) Oh, I feel more tired today than usual. (Noticing Petra, who seems impatient.) Go, if you wish to chat with your guard.”

i. Who is the speaker?

Answer: Dona Laura is the speaker.

ii. Who does ‘you’ refer to?

Answer: ‘You’ refers to Dona Laura’s maid Petra.

Follow us on:

iii. Who is the ‘guard’ the speaker is talking to?

Answer: The ‘guard’ is the ‘park’s guard’ the speaker is talking to.

b. Read the extract dialogue from the play and answer the questions that follow:

DONA LAURA: (Indignantly.) Look out!

DON GONZALO: Are you speaking to me, senora?

DONA LAURA: Yes, to you.

DON GONZALO: What do you wish?

DONA LAURA: You have scared away the birds who were feeding on my crumbs.

DON GONZALO: What do I care about the birds?

DONA LAURA: But I do.

DON GONZALO: This is a public park.

c. Who is Dona addressing by saying “Look out”?

Answer: Dona is addressing Don Gonzalo by saying “Look out”

d. What was Dona doing?

Answer: Dona was feeding breadcrumbs to pigeons in the park.

e. Who scared the birds? Are they pet birds?

Answer: Don Gonzalo scared the birds. No, they aren’t pet birds.

f. Where are the speakers at the time of the conversation?

Answer: The speakers are in a park at the time of conversation.

g. What is the effect of flashback in the play when Dona Laura and Don Gonzalo knew that they were the lovers in the past?

Answer: The flashback makes the drama more meaningful and effective. That gives clear information to the readers about their unsuccessful love affair of the past. The past memory is still fresh in their minds and that unites them again as new friends. After, flashback, they recognize each other and feel emotionally close. That makes the readers clear that they were separated because of some causes.

h. Discuss how the play is built around humour and irony.

Answer: The play is full of irony. Two old time lovers hide their identity and talk to each other as strangers. However, they know that they are old-time lovers. Laura calls herself as the best friend

Follow us on:



AR Dinesh



puspas.com.np



Puspa Shrestha

of the Silver Maiden and Gonzalo says that it was his cousin. From inside they are lovers from outside they are strangers. Similarly, that irony creates humour. Laura makes Gonzalo speechless in many situations because of her witty statements. They try to fool each other by fabricating false stories, but from inside they know they are lying. They know they lie too much. but appear as if they don't know each other personally. When Gonzalo says he had visited America when he was six, Laura says he might have gone with Columbus. Similarly, when Gonzalo cleans shoes with his handkerchief, Laura asks whether he uses his shoe brush as handkerchief. Gonzalo makes up a heroic ending of himself and Laura shows emotional death of the Silver Maiden.

i. How is the title 'A Sunny Morning' justifiable? Discuss.

Answer: This play is set in a park in Madrid, Spain on a sunny morning. In this setting, the entire play has been presented. A sunny morning has provided an ideal setting for a reunion of two former lovers in their golden years. They argue, know each other, conceal their identities, admire, tell fabricated stories about their deaths, prefer to meet again the next sunny morning, and so on. From start to finish, the entire play continues to make us laugh hysterically while remaining in this setting of a sunny morning. As a result, the title 'A Sunny Morning' is quite appropriate, as it depicts a reconciliation of former lovers in a park with great humour.

Reference beyond the text

a. What do you predict will happen in the next meeting between Dona Laura and Don Gonzalo? Discuss.

Answer: I predict that Dona Laura and Don Gonzalo will be much more excited in the next meeting. They will talk and share their feelings through fake means this time too. Both of them will try to make each other happy. Don Gonzalo will certainly be much frank this time. He will try to show his respect towards her. The readers will get a chance to see their shyness. They will surely get much more fun through their pretentious acts.

Follow us on:

b. Was it wise for Dona Laura and Don Gonzalo to keep their identities secret? How might their secrets affect future meetings?

Answer: Yes, it was wise for Dona Laura and Don to keep their identities secret. At the age of seventy, they both realized that they were former lovers who separated due to their ill-fate. But, they did a good job of not revealing their real identities. Both of them were quite old with weak physical conditions. They were not happy due to their old looks. At this age, the revelation of their reality would be vain. They thought it better to hide their identities and pretend to be unfamiliar. They chose the best way to enjoy their sweet youthful memories through fake means. Their secrets might affect them in their future meetings if they keep on lying in such a way. There was a high risk of the revelation of secrets due to their old age. If they reveal their realities unknowingly, they won't get to meet with each other in their upcoming future. Hence, it was wise for them to keep their identities secret.

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

[English](#)

[Nepali](#)

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:



Literature

Unit 4.3 Refund (One Act Plays)

Class 11 English Exercise

Fritz Karinthy

Understanding the text

Answer the following questions.

a. Why does Wasserkopf demand a refund of his tuition fees from the school?

Answer: Wasserkopf demands a refund of his tuition fees from the school because he claims that he didn't learn anything from the school and his 18 years education made him nothing but an incompetent ass.

b. Why does Wasserkopf consider himself good for nothing?

Answer: Wasserkopf considers himself good for nothing because his school taught him nothing and he becomes failure many times in his life in the matter of getting a job too.

c. What did the teachers decide to do when Wasserkopf asked for a refund?

Answer: The teachers approved Wasserkopf's request for a re-examination and pass him in all subjects, even if his answers were incorrect. They agreed to prove Wasserkopf's answers to their questions correct.

d. Why did Wasserkopf give ridiculous answers? Why did the teachers accept these answers?

Answer: Wasserkopf gave ridiculous answers so that he could fail the exam by any means necessary and receive a refund. Teachers accepted his answers because they wanted him to pass the exam to preserve the school's reputation.

e. How does the Mathematics Master describe Wasserkopf's character?

Answer: The Mathematics Master describe Wasserkopf's character

Follow us on:

as a sly and crafty individual who intends to deliberately fail his exam in order to recoup his tuition fee. He is a unique individual who irritates all of the teachers with his abusive language.

f. How did the teachers outwit Wasserkopf?

Answer: He gave wrong and ridiculous answers to fail the test. But the teachers were cleverer than him. After asking Wasserkopf the easy question, the mathematics teacher said that he failed the exam and asked him to calculate the amount the school had to refund. He did it very well. The mathematics teachers said that he solved the difficult question as he was a mathematical genius. The teachers declared that he passed the exam. In this way, they outwitted Wasserkopf.

g. What is the final judgment on Wasserkopf's demand of refund?

Answer: At last, he gets nothing on his demand of refund. The principal declares that Wasserkopf has passed the re-examination with distinction in every subject, and has again shown that he is entitled to the certificate they awarded him on his graduation.

Reference to the context

a. Read the extract from the play given below and answer the questions that follow:

“It’s possible I’ve changed. What the hell...! Your class records will show I’ve got a right to come here.”

i. Who is the speaker? Who is he speaking to?

Answer: Wasserkopf is the speaker. He’s speaking to the principal of his former school.

ii. Why is the speaker say these words?

Answer: The speaker says these words because he is dissatisfied with his educational records from his previous school, which he obtained eighteen years ago.

iii. Where is the speaker at this moment?

Answer: The speaker is in the Principal’s office at this moment.

Follow us on:



b. Read the extract dialogue given below and answer the questions that follow:

“THE STAFF: (bowing, heartily) How do you do?”

WASSERKOPF: Who the hell are you? Sit down, you loafers! (He grins, waiting to be thrown out)

THE PRINCIPAL: How dare you –”

i. What is to be the response to ‘How do you do?’

Answer: ‘I am fine’ is to be the response to ‘How do you do’.

ii. Is Wasserkopf’s response polite enough to the staff?

Answer: No, Wasserkopf’s response to the staff isn’t polite enough. He uses derogatory language against them.

iii. How does Wasserkopf rebuke the staff?

Answer: Wasserkopf rebukes the staff, calling them “loafers” and asking, “Who the hell are you?”

iv. What does the principal mean by ‘How dare you –’?

Answer: The Principal is referring to Wasserkopf’s dare to make abusive remarks about masters when he says, ‘How dare you?’

c. Explain the following line of the play:

“Because I didn’t get my money’s worth, that’s why!”

Answer: This line was spoken by the main character of the play, Wasserkopf. In this line, Wasserkopf explains his reason for his arrival and demand a refund to the school’s principal. According to him, his education from school did provide him nothing. He is fired from the job and is in financial crisis. Wasserkopf is, therefore, justified in claiming for a refund. He adds that a re-examination will prove that his demand is valid.

d. What is the theme of the play?

Answer: This play is a satire on today’s educational system, which has failed to prepare students for life. This play showcases teachers’ wit in the face of an ill-natured old pupil Wasserkopf who returns to his old school with an absurd demand of a refund as he has got nothing reading there.

e. Sketch the character of Wasserkopf.

Answer: Wasserkopf is a forty-year-old poor and greedy man who

Follow us on:



AR Dinesh



puspas.com.np



Puspa Shrestha

was born in Hungary. He is a short-tempered man who has been fired several times for his bad manners and rude behaviour. Wasserkopf seems to be the type of person who does not do his duty and blames others. While at school, he just wanted to pass and did not study well. He does not even know about foreign exchange. That is why he did not get a good job. He himself says he is good for nothing. Wasserkopf also sounds like an undisciplined man with no good manners. He does not respect his teachers and uses bad words and derogatory language with them. He thinks that he is clever enough to get the refund but because of his foolishness and stupidity, he falls in his Mathematics teachers' trap.

Reference beyond the text

a. The play is a satire on the present day education system. Do you think that our education system does not prepare students for life? Discuss.

Answer: Yes, I believe that our educational system does not adequately prepare students for life. I think that our education system does not prepare students for life. Our education system is based on memorization. Students hardly learn skills useful for real life. But today's students also do not care about real knowledge. They just want to pass the exams with good marks rather than learning. Courses are more theoretical than practical. Our curriculum doesn't prepare us for our future struggle and survival. For example, we are taught the things which are useless in our real life. It makes students dull and less creative in practical life. Hence, sadly it is true that our education system does not prepare us for life.

b. Our education system focuses on memorisation rather than creative thinking. Do you think the knowledge imparted by education may not have practical relevance in one's day-to-day life? Who do you blame for this?

Answer: Yes, I believe that the knowledge imparted by education may not be practical in daily life. Our education system is more based on memorization than on learning the skills useful for real life. I think that our government is mainly responsible for the cause.

Follow us on:

The government should make curriculum more practical than theoretical so that the students can learn the thing practically rather than from writing into the papers. Students are focused on remembering than in doing the things creatively. Creativity has no place in their lives. They just want to pass the exams with good marks rather than learning. Students too are responsible for this because they are doing the things blindly whatever they are said and taught without focusing on learning things practically. They are doing their job as an elephant in a circus. Thus I blame the government and the students for this.

c. Most of the students want to learn just for examination rather than knowledge. Do you think that certificate will help them in their future career?

Answer: It's true that most of the students want to learn just for examination rather than knowledge. They want to get higher marks only by hook or crook. But that certificate won't help them in their future career. Students who only prepare for exams won't enjoy credentials throughout their future careers. They're far from the concept of knowledge, but they trust quick solutions to pass your exams. The method they have chosen doesn't benefit their future. Since certificates never demonstrate genuine knowledge or skills, true knowledge will certainly be lacking in the future. Many certificate holders don't get proper job due to insufficient skill and hence they are forced to do manual jobs in foreign countries although they have degree in Nepal. By this we can say that the certificate is just a piece of paper and gaining certificate by memorizing rather than learning would lead a person to a dead end.

THE END

If you liked this note, then please do share it with your friends and please subscribe to our [YouTube Channel](#). Also, like and follow us on our [Facebook Page](#).

Follow us on:



Class 11 Notes Collection

Now, it is easier to find notes of all chapters for English and Nepali subjects. Just click on the following button and you will get complete lists of chapters with links to notes. 😊

English

Nepali

Please email us at pdf-feedback@puspas.com.np if you have any suggestions or feedback.

Follow us on:

